

## **LET YOURSELF BE INSTRUCTED BY JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF**

*Very few people know that from 1851 to 1864 Jesus gave a much more complete story of the events that happened during His last 3 years before His crucifixion. A much more complete gospel than what we can find in the Bible. This was revealed by Jesus Christ Himself to a man He choose, namely the Austrian Jakob Lorber who dedicated the last 24 years of his life in the service of our Lord by writing down what He dictated to him through the inner word. He heard the words very clearly in the region of his heart and wrote them faithfully down.*

*This total work consists of 25 books of 100 chapters each. An enormous valuable spiritual treasure. It is up to each individual to discover and proof the many teachings that Jesus revealed to His disciples.*

*Revelations that were not intended to reveal to the world at that time but which are now revealed in a very clear way to us.*

# Book 18

*There is no copyright for this book. This is God's Word and God's Word is free.  
It may be copied freely on condition that the text will not be changed.*

*Original German book: "Das grosse Evangelium Johannes" (1851-1864).  
This Book 17 is translated from the German book VII - chapter 82 to 181.*

## FOREWORD

It was not the intention to make of this book an "intellectual" translation, but rather to translate it as close as possible to the original text given by Jesus Christ.


The words, expressions and even the sentence structure were kept as close as possible to the original without losing its meaning.

This work was made for every simple humble person whose main purpose it is to know the truth.

The translator

*(Table of contents on page 318)*

## 1. A REMARKABLE SUNRISE

 HE next morning on the Sabbath, about a quarter of an hour before sunrise, I stood up from My chair and went directly outside. Peter, James and John noticed it immediately and came also outside before the sun came up.

[2] We went to the top of the hill, but we were not alone for a long time because the 7 Upper-Egyptians came soon behind us and **the first Upper-Egyptian** said: “Lord, forgive us that we have immediately followed You. On this Earth we surely will never be able to follow You in the flesh, and this Earth will certainly never more experience the endless rare happiness that its Creator will still set His bodily foot upon it. But we have the indescribable happiness to be eye and ear witnesses of this wonder, which is the greatest of Your endless eternal wondrous acts. And therefore it would be a gross sin to loose You out of sight even for one moment and not to hear each word that comes from Your mouth.”

[3] **I** said: “Whoever follows Me will never walk the wrong way, and salvation to all those who think just like you. But, as you easily can see, there are still many who are still very deep asleep, although the sun is at the point of rising. However, let us leave them in their sleep. They also will wake up at a right hour of the day. But many will only wake up in their evening-life and this awakening in the night of their live will give them little comfort.

[4] Those who will still wake up during a clear starry night will still be well off. But not so good will it be for those who will wake up during an evening which is densely clouded, because they will have to endure a wakeful, long, dark and very comfortless night. Even if they will want to sleep during such a dark night, no sleep will come over them. That will be a bad time on this Earth. But whoever is watching even during the most dark night until the end of his earthly days will be blessed.”

[5] Here **Peter** asked Me: “Lord, then it will look bad for all those who like to sleep long while the day has already begun. Or those, like some, who by their desire for sleeping want to sleep even the

whole day. Can those people still not be helped on time?”

[6] **I** said to him: “But Simon Juda, how long will I have to suffer you in your foolishness? Did I talk about the natural sleep of the body? Now look to these 7 gentiles. How often will they put you, an arch Jew, to shame? They have well understood Me. Then why not you, while you are still already so long with Me?”

[7] **Peter** said: “Lord, please be patient with my still great lack of understanding in so many things.”

[8] **I** said: “This I surely have, but you will still stay Peter. But My Spirit – and never your flesh – will bring you to a higher understanding when I have ascended.

[9] But now, look all of you carefully to this sunrise that will be very special today for this region on Earth. Let everyone of you ask himself if he has understood it also in a spiritual sense. Because everything that happens on this natural world cannot happen in a different way than by what is flowing down from God’s Heavens. And what is flowing inside the natural worlds by the Heavens of all angels comes initially from Me. Therefore, be very careful, because also the nature must in your presence witness of Me.”

[10] When I said these words, the sun rose above the horizon and when it stood about a half degree above the horizon, another sun arose above the horizon, but 1 degree more to the north, completely like the first and real sun. This was namely a complete developed secondary sun, which really belongs to the rare phenomena.

[11] The Upper-Egyptians knew immediately what was happening and **the first Upper-Egyptian** said: “Lord, such phenomena are rarely so bright in our region. I myself have only seen one after the rainy season and that is 40 years ago. Out of my inner view I also could explain the spiritual meaning of this phenomenon.”

[12] **I** said: “This I do know, because you are still in the old church of Noah in which men until Abraham’s time were still in connection with the angels, with the exception of the descendants of Nimrod who in the first place kept themselves busy with the world, and for this reason had fallen. Therefore, you have also a

real revelation in yourselves and you understand the inner meaning of this phenomenon. But with My disciples this is by far still not the case. They are full of faith and good will but they can only receive the full light when the 7 Spirits out of God are in full order present in them.

[13] Therefore, for the salvation of all nations I have to lead them outwardly, so that they can perform their actions completely out of their own will according to My eternal order, and that is why I also want to hear from them what they have to say about this phenomenon. And therefore, Simon Juda, you can speak now.”

[14] **Peter** said: “O Lord, if I have to explain this now out of myself, it truly will not come easy to me. I see now 2 perfect suns and do not even know which one is the real one. And down there on the street there are also a lot of people looking at this phenomenon. They probably know still less about it than me. I, who am supposed to be considered already as a wise man, do not understand anything of it. Then how must this phenomenon appear to those people down there?”

[15] With this, Peter tried to avoid My question, but **I** said: “Those people down there do not concern us now. I am only occupied with you now and I see that you do not understand this phenomenon. Therefore I must ask it to My James.”

[16] Also **James** said: “My Lord and Master. I also cannot do it one hair better than my brother Simon Juda. I also do not know which of the 2 suns is in fact the real one, because the first one is equally big as the other, and both of them are giving equally as much light. Also the birds in the sky seem to find it strange because they keep quiet and do not make any sound, and it seems as if they want to say by that: ‘Which one is the real one? Because a fake one we do not want to greet with our singing.’”

[17] **I** said: “What you said was good, although you did not understand it yourself. But if you do not understand these phenomena, then what will you say when there, further to the south, still another third sun will come up? Now look, as a beginning it is already present in the sky in the form of vapor. And

soon, by surprise, there will be a third sun that will look exactly the same as these 2 suns. Look it is already shining.”

[18] Now another third completely developed sun was visible. The people in the street began to be afraid and many of them were running away and ran into the nearest houses. Those who were not so much afraid continued to watch this rare natural phenomenon. The birds in the sky became very restless and soon we could see also a lot of eagles and vultures flying around. They were chasing one another. And when the pigeons and other small birds noticed the many mighty enemies above them, they also flew away and hid themselves as good as possible.

[19] Here **the Upper-Egyptian** was making the remark: “It is truly remarkable. When I watched this same phenomenon 40 years ago in my dwelling place – but then only with one secondary sun – also then a lot of similar birds of prey came immediately in the sky, fighting with one another, which otherwise is very rarely the case. Today the lions and the panthers will also war with one another. But what the meaning of that third sun is, I also do not understand it completely, yet I can perceive a certain idea in myself.”

## 2. THE CAUSE OF THE SECONDARY SUNS



Now the other disciples, except Judas Iscariot, came also, and together with them, Lazarus, Nicodemus and the innkeeper Jordan. When they saw Me, they asked immediately what was happening and what was the meaning of it.

[2] And our **Lazarus** made the remark: “Lord, it is really very curious. Now 3 suns are shining very brightly and yet I sense a certain threatening gloominess in the air, and even stronger above the ground. The tops of the high mountains look very obscure and moreover, it is nasty cold, although 3 suns should give more light and more warmth than only 1 sun. How can that be?”

[3] **The Upper-Egyptian** said: “Friend Lazarus, what you are saying about your natural observation is completely true, and I have experienced exactly the same 40 years ago with such a

phenomenon in Upper-Egypt, of which I can give you the natural explanation, but not the deeper lying spiritual cause, and certainly not now that there are 2 secondary suns.”

[4] **Lazarus said:** “Then give me the natural explanation anyway.”

[5] **The Upper-Egyptian said:** “Look, friend, at certain times and in certain years a fine vapor is forming in the highest layer of the sky, which is reaching out at a height of average about 10 times the Lebanon above the surface of the Earth. And because this vapor has a high degree of stability, the sea of air above the Earth is set completely at rest, although not everywhere, as can be seen at certain times on the great ocean, on which then on a certain part of the surface of the sea a complete quiet mirror is forming, while oftentimes there will be waves around it. If then on the big surface of the sea of air there is also a partial rest, the image of the sun is reflected completely identical just like on a very quiet sea mirror, and for this reason we can see a secondary sun, entirely formed by natural causes. If now, on several places of the surface of the sea of air there is a complete rest as described above, then equally as many secondary suns will be seen as there are places of rest that have been formed on the surface of the sea of air, on condition that those are in such a position that the image received by it, falls in a straight line on a corresponding region where there is an identical rest. If the position of this place of rest is changing, then also the secondary sun will completely disappear for this region, or still a particular glow will be seen. And if the rest on such a place changes into a waving movement, then also, the secondary sun will be gone.

[6] After such phenomena, which are formed as a result of the just now described fine vapor in the highest layer of air of the Earth and which are also the cause that there is less light and warmth, denser clouds will come soon, and after that, heavier ones, so that finally it also starts to rain.

[7] And with this you have received in a few words the natural explanation of this phenomenon. Of course the real, pure spiritual cause, only the Lord knows and then the one to whom He wants to

reveal it. I also have a suspicion of it, but it is still by far not clear to me, especially not that part which the future keeps firmly hidden. Did you understand that?”

[8] **Lazarus said:** “Yes, my very respectable friend, this I have understood really good and clearly, and I cannot refrain from making here the not exactly unimportant remark that until now the Jews never did anything with regard to a pure discernment of the phenomena in the great nature and a fundamental understanding thereof. Maybe some people have discovered something here and there on their own, and did also discover the cause of many phenomena, but they kept it wisely for themselves and did not tell anybody. Because in the first place it made good money – namely among the more enlightened gentiles – and secondly they had to hide such knowledge and science for fear of the Pharisees, so that they would not be persecuted everywhere by them.

[9] But I think the following thing: a good knowledge and evaluation of the thousands of different phenomena in nature would be the best way to keep the people from all kind of superstition with its destructive consequences. Therefore, it would be also very desirable when the people from now on would also in this respect receive a thorough education. Do You also agree on this, o Lord and Master?”

[10] **I said:** “Nobody more than I, for man can never understand and completely perceive the deeper supernatural truths if he does not know the ground on which he himself as a natural man is standing and walking. And precisely for this reason I Myself have already explained to you so many things concerning the special phenomena in this natural world here. I have shown you in a practical way the form of the Earth and what is causing the day and the night there. I have shown you the cause of a solar eclipse and an eclipse of the moon and of the falling stars, and I have shown you the moon and the sun and all planets and the whole endless starry sky.

[11] **And I have also told you that man can only love God completely when he also comes to know Him continually better**



and purer in His numberless many works. And if I Myself have given you this advice, then it is obvious that I completely agree with your good opinion. And if Moses would not have considered it as highly necessary for the true and pure education of all Jews he would not have written a sixth and seventh book about the things and phenomena in nature and moreover still a prophetic supplement dealing with the science of correspondences between the natural and the spiritual world.

[12] But already during the time of the kings this important branch of transfer of knowledge was neglected more and more. On the one hand by a section of the priests who became more and more greedy and darker in the knowledge of what is true, and on the other hand also by the kings themselves. And when the kingdom was divided already among the first descendents of Salomon, this branch of knowledge got lost in such a way that now you hardly know that, from Moses until the time of Samuel, such a science was intensely practiced by the Jews.

[13] Therefore, I have explained already many things to you, and you understand now already quite a lot. But the most important is and remains the continual striving for the full rebirth of the spirit in the soul, for only thereby will man be initiated in all truth and wisdom, and will he have a complete and coherent discernment in everything from the earthly unto the purely spiritual heavenly. By this light, he will have eternal life, which means endlessly more than the science of all things in nature.

[14] But to what advantage will it be for man if he would know very precisely all things and phenomena in the natural world from the greatest to the smallest and would be capable to evaluate these very sharply, but thereby will be so far away from the rebirth of his spirit in the soul as this Earth is from Heaven. Could these many sciences give him eternal life? Form an opinion about this and then tell Me what you think about it.”

[15] **Lazarus** said: “O Lord and Master, then it would be better if man had never been born on this world. Because a self-conscious living creature who can think, reason and can understand so much

and accomplish, and who has often such a great pleasure for Your works which are making him happy, would be, without having a certain expectation of an eternal and perfect existence, to me many thousands of times more miserable than the most miserable naked worm in the very dirtiest and most stinking pool of the whole Earth.

[16] And whoever would educate man from the cradle, to a clearer view, will commit the greatest crime to humanity. Because that will kill man double and still more, in the most miserable way, because by this he will make man the most miserable creature.

[17] It is true that an animal lives also, but it certainly is only very vaguely aware of itself. It cannot think, does not know death, does not know to evaluate the worth of life and can therefore not possess any fear of death and is therefore happy.

[18] But then, look at man who knows all too well the inestimable worth of life. If he would realize that with the death of the body everything is totally finished, he will be immediately confused, will curse and damn his existence a 1,000 times, and the greatest benefactor of humanity will be the one who will possess the might and the power to kill mankind on the whole Earth and also himself, and consequently to exterminate them. Or he should know the art to stun all men at once in such a way that they will not be aware anymore of themselves, what in fact will be the same as when he will kill them all.

[19] If man has no further expectation or not even a founded hope for an eternal life, he firstly will curse God – if he would believe in Him – his life long, instead of glorifying and praising Him. He will curse Moses and all prophets as being the greatest enemies of man, and the one who will observe even only 1 jot of the law will be the greatest fool.

[20] From all this it surely is clear that the striving of man for the rebirth of his spirit in his soul – once he knows the ways to it – is the first and uppermost necessity. Because without this rebirth he will cease completely to be a human being, despite his ever so clear science. Then he will be nothing more than an intelligent,

knowledgeable and therefore all the more miserable animal in the form of a human being. Lord and Master, am I right in this or not?"

### 3. THE LORD EXPLAINS THE PHENOMENON OF THE SECONDARY SUNS



**I SAID:** "Yes sure. But look, there are still many people on Earth who firstly do not believe in any God and Creator and thus also not at all in an eternal life of the soul. But they live very well and with pleasure, shouting for joy and jubilate, and besides that, they are full of pride and greed, let others work for them and the one who would remind them of an eternal life of the soul after the death of the body, will be laughed at and mocked, and they will say to him: 'Fool, once you have died you must then come and teach us, then we will believe you. But as long as you are still alive and are waiting for death just like us, we do not believe your fantasy.' Then what would you answer to this?"

[2] **Lazarus said:** "Lord, there is indeed little that can be said about it. I certainly can say nothing about it. Because once people are too deep asleep in the death of matter, they hardly can be completely converted to the true faith and even less to the life in the spirit. Therefore I would prefer if You would explain us a little the spiritual meaning of these 3 still visible suns."

[3] **I said:** "This I will do also, but first I still had to show you that men without the slightest expectation for an eternal life are also very satisfied with only the temporal life. And of people who have a certain expectation of an eternal life – as you, together with My disciples are one of them – there are only a very few in this time, and there will never be too many on this Earth. But the fact that this is so, and also will be so in the distant future, is now precisely shown by this phenomenon of the 3 suns.

[4] You and all the others know that there is only one sun shining in the sky, while you are seeing now three. You also know that there exists only one true God and Creator. And yet, from this time

on the foolish people will make, by all kinds of false delusions, of the one true God three Gods.

[5] Then the light of life will become weak among the people on Earth and the love for God and fellowman will turn cold. Then the few who still will have a pure faith will be seized by great fear, like those little birds, and the kings of the Earth will become like violent beasts of prey and will continuously wage murderous wars against one another, and the one who will pray to the three gods will not be heard.

[6] The first secondary sun which rose more to the north almost at the same time as the real sun – which in this likeness represents Myself – represents the counter-prophet or the counter-anointed who will arise and say: ‘Look, I am the true anointed of God. Listen to me if you want to be blessed’. But I am telling you that no one of you must let himself be seduced. Because he will be a messenger of Hell and by his deceitful arts he will perform all kinds of wondrous signs, and will show a very pious face and pray and make sacrifices, but his heart will be full of bitter hatred against all truth which he will persecute by fire and sword, and all who will not keep his teaching he will curse. This one will also invent the three gods and will let them be worshipped. I also will be counted to that as the Savior of the world but divided into three persons. They will still confess one God with their mouth, yet worship three persons, of whom each one will also be a complete god and will have to be worshipped separately.

[7] But not long after that, there will arise a second secondary sun or a second secondary anointed, who will obscure the first one in every way. That one will still be 10 times worse than the first one. Because the first one will at least not forbid My word completely, but the southern one will totally forbid My word and My teaching and will only take from it what by coincidence suits his bad purpose. He will indeed have My sign erected on all corners of the streets to worship, but apart from that, thousands of others will be displayed, and mostly those in which he takes pleasure.

[8] In that time pride, discord and mutual hatred will reach its

highest degree. Then one people will war against the other, one war after another will take place, there will be great earthquakes, years of bad harvest, high cost of living, famine and epidemics. However, then I will destroy the roots of the counter-anointed, so that he will wither away like a tree of which the roots have been cut off. There will be much cursing, lamenting, crying and complaining, and then the evil and worthless secondary suns – although they take their false luster from Me – will perish, just like the secondary suns are now perishing before your eyes. Look, they become more and more vague. The shape of the sun is passing over into a weak-shining haze and instead of that, the only true sun comes forward, more beautiful, more shiny and more warming. Now you also see the little birds coming out of their hiding places and are greeting the only true sun with their singing, and the big birds of prey are scattering and are hurrying to their dark forests. [9] And so it will happen in those times. Everything that is high will be lowered. The mountain peaks must turn into a flat and fertile land. Then one will not ask: ‘Who is king over this land?’ but: ‘Who is the first and greatest benefactor of this happy people? Let us go to him, so that we can learn his wisdom according to the order of God.’

[10] When this happy time will come, wolves, bears, lambs and hares will drink peacefully together from the same spring. Did you all understand this well?”

[11] **Nicodemus** said: “We have understood it quite well, but these predictions did not sound particularly pleasant and one could ask here: Lord, must all this take place until finally Your light of truth will be able to shine totally free and unhindered over the whole Earth? We have now received Your purest word and light and we will spread it also in the same way. The happy results of it will show the people that the word that is preached by us is the only true and real one. And I do not understand who would still dare to act against it with a false teaching.”

[12] **I** said: “To speak well is easier than to act well, and in the action lies the seed of the weed that is also sown unexpectedly

together with the pure wheat in the soul of the heart of man. That will take root and continue to grow among the pure wheat and will often suffocate it and ruin it. Therefore, you should not only be listeners of My word, but also act according to that word. But also you will be reluctant in your acting because of the great and mighty world. Yes, you will confess Me by yourself secretly, but out of fear for the world you hardly will dare to speak in My name and still less will dare to act in My name. Because the world could notice it and call you to account if it will notice that you have directed yourselves to Me, because it is showing from your actions. And see, the question is not why everything that I have predicted to you must happen until in the last times the truth will be made completely free and the nations will be blessed, but it will depend on you only if you will fear the world more than Me or less.

[13] Because of your fear for the world, the evil seed together with the wheat will be sown, and out of that, the 2 secondary suns will come forth. And the reason why I have caused this now to happen and have predicted it, is that when it will happen like this, you will remember – here or in the beyond – that I have shown you already this in advance.

[14] Therefore, I am telling you once more what I have already said before: do not be afraid for those who can indeed kill your body, but further on cannot harm your soul. If you want to fear somebody then fear the One in whose power lies also the live or the dead of your soul.

[15] Indeed, many of you will have the right courage, but not all, and some of you will even be offended at Me.

[16] The Shepherd will be bound and beaten, and the sheep will scatter themselves. Great fear will come over them, sadness and fright. But I will visit them again, bring them together and will give them courage and strength against the enemies of the light out of the Heavens. But now, nothing more of this, because I have only told you this so that you can remember it at the right time and will act correctly, and that the old proverb will not be applied to you

also: 'Out of the eye, out of the heart'. And now it is already time for the morning meal. Let us therefore go home."

#### 4. INSTRUCTIONS OF THE LORD FOR THE VISIT TO THE TEMPLE



ICODEMUS and Joseph of Arimathea, as well as the old rabbi became a bit embarrassed for taking part of the morning meal on the Sabbath after sunrise.

[2] However, **I** said to them: "If already here you allow objections to arise into your mind because of the Sabbath, while you still should know that I am also Lord of the Sabbath of Moses, then how will you fare when you will sit again in the council of the Pharisees and the elders?"

[3] After these words, the three took courage and went home with us, ate and drank with us and were very cheerful.

[4] **And the old rabbi said:** "Yes, yes, the Lord and Master is right in everything. An old habit is like a shirt with rusty stains. No matter what effort you make, you never can make it completely clean again."

[5] **I** said: "This is a true word. Therefore, remove the old man completely and put on a new one, because the old man is from now on no more appropriate. But now eat and drink still some more, then we will go to the temple."

[6] Upon which **Nicodemus** said: "Do You really dare to go amongst those brutes again?"

[7] **I** said: "I do not go to the temple for them, but for the people who have come here today for My sake, and therefore I do not fear these brutes. But let us now do our best to go to the temple quickly."

[8] Nobody dared to make any objections against My remark, because everybody thought by himself: 'He has power over Heaven and Hell and does not have to shrink for these brutes of the temple nor does He have to even be afraid of them.'

[9] However, even before I left for the temple, the Romans and My

disciples asked Me if they also had to go to the temple and what had to be done with the young people in the mean time.

[10] **I** said: “Nobody of you will be refused the entrance to the temple, but the young people will stay here. My servant knows for sure what he has to do. However, if you will go to the temple, then go ahead in order to choose good places. I will come later. But My elder disciples will stay here and will go together with Me, because it is important for them that they will be witnesses of all My words and deeds.”

[11] **The Roman Agricola** said: “That I also would like to be. But also in this, only Your holy will be done, like everywhere and always.”

[12] **I** said: “If you also want to be with Me as a witness, you can join My elder disciples. Because I still will perform one sign before I will open My mouth before the Jews. We will meet someone who is blind already since his birth, not far away from the temple. He will see again, precisely today on a Sabbath. Now you go ahead, but it will be better for you four, who have chosen My side only yesterday, if you stay here, because in the temple you would quickly be recognized and persecuted.”

[13] The four men could perceive that and they stayed on the Mount of Olives.

[14] Nicodemus came also to Me and asked how he could go down unobserved with his 2 friends.

[15] **I** said: “Join with the Upper-Egyptians. They will guide you down in such a way that no one will notice you.”

[16] With this, they also were satisfied and they left immediately with the Upper-Egyptians. All the others followed them quickly. Only the 3 magicians, who were still with Me, remained and prepared themselves to follow Me.

[17] Then Simon Juda, named **Peter** said: “Lord, do You want that also these three will come with us?”

[18] **I** said: “Why are you worried about that? When I said to all the others that they had to go ahead, I did not make an exception for these three. However, by that I did not put their will and their



heart under compulsion, and so they may do what they want and for which their heart urges them. If I think that something is good, then you should not worry that something may be wrong, because the one who follows us, will certainly not walk on a wrong track.”

[19] With this, also our Peter was satisfied and we made ourselves ready to go on our way.

[20] Finally the innkeeper Jordan came, asking Me what should be done about the midday meal.

[21] But I said to him: “My friend Jordan, now we have to give food and drink to people who are spiritually hungry and thirsty, which is worth a lot more than the food for the body and drink for a dry throat. Therefore, do not worry yet about a midday meal. When I come back, everything will still be settled on time.”

[22] With this short explanation also our innkeeper was satisfied, who immediately after that, called all the servants of the house together and gave them all kinds of good lessons, so that after that, they all – close to 30 people – should believe in Me. Because before that time they did not exactly know what they had to think about Me, although they had seen a lot of signs. With that, also Jordan, according to My advice, gave food and drink in My name to those who were spiritually hungry and thirsty.

[23] However, after that I gave Jordan this advice, I went immediately with My disciples to the city, where the streets and alleys were crowded with people.

## THE LORD IN THE TEMPLE

### 5. HEALING BEFORE THE TEMPLE OF THE MAN WHO WAS BORN BLIND



WHEN we came outside at the large, spacious square in front of the temple, immediately we saw the still young beggar sitting on a stone. He was a little older than 20 years and was blind already since birth.

[2] When **My disciples** saw him, they knew that this was the born-blind man of whom I referred to on the mountain. Therefore, they asked **Me**: “Lord and Master. Now who has sinned, he or his parents, because he came in this world born-blind?”

[3] **I** said: “How can you still ask such absurd questions? How could he have sinned in the womb and therefore as punishment come blind into this world? However, I am telling you: neither this blind man nor his parents have sinned, but this was allowed so that God’s works would be revealed to him for the people. Because now I have to perform the works of Him who sent **Me**, as long as the day lasts (on Earth, namely by the personal presence of the Lord). Also, that specific night that I mentioned to you, will come, but then nobody will be able to accomplish anything. Since I am in this world, I am clearly the Light of the world. After **Me** comes the night.”

[4] **My disciples** looked at each other and said: “What is the use of the present spiritual day for the people if after His return it will be night again, worse than it is now?”

[5] **I** said: “Is it then **My** wish that the night will follow? Oh no, but the laziness of the people will want that, and the will of man must remain free. Even if by that he would become a tenfold devil. Because without the total free will, a human being ceases to be a human being, and he is nothing else but a machine, which I have shown you clearly many times.”

[6] No one made a remark on this, for they saw **My** seriousness.

[7] After saying this to **My** disciples, I bent down to the ground,

took a little clay, spat a little saliva on it and made mud of it, which I then rubbed on the eyes of the blind man.

[8] **Then I** said to the blind man: “Go now to the pool of Siloam (that means I sent him to that place and his guide guided him) and wash yourself.”

[9] **He** went to that place, washed himself and came back again seeing.

[10] **His neighbors and those who saw him before** knew that he was a blind beggar and said: “Is this not the blind man who was begging on that stone before?”

[11] **Some of them** said: “Yes, yes, that is him.”

[12] **Others** said: “He was born blind and it never happened before that such a person has been made seeing. But he looks exactly like the blind person.”

[13] **Finally, the person who was blind before** said himself: “Why are you talking about me? I am the one who was blind before and am now seeing.”

[14] **The people around** asked: “What happened that your eyes were opened and you can see? Who did that?”

[15] **And he** answered them: “The Man who said silently to me that His name is Jesus (Mediator, Savior), made mud, rubbed it on my eyes and then said that I had to go to the pool of Siloam to wash my eyes. I did that, went to it, washed my eyes and became seeing.”

[16] **Moreover, they** said to him: “Then where is this Jesus now?”

[17] **He** said: “But this is a remarkable question of you. You saw when He rubbed the mud on my eyes and you did not notice Him? Then how could I have noticed Him while I was blind? Since that was impossible, I can also not know now where He is, although I myself would gladly like to know where and who He is, in order to give Him my sincere thanks.”

[18] **When this man gave such an answer to those who asked questions, the crowd** around said: “Oh, this is a real miracle and the Man who made you seeing must be a great prophet. This should be heard by our arch Jews and the Pharisees who claim that

because of the gentiles, no more prophet will arise in our time till the Jews will drive all the gentiles out of the country. They must hear that even now, just like before, there are great prophets, despite that the gentiles are in our country. Let yourself therefore be guided by us to the Pharisees. We all will testify for you.”

[19] **The man who had been blind before, thought this to be a good idea and he agreed to be taken to the Pharisees in the temple.**

[20] **Here must be added the special remark that this was not an ordinary Sabbath on which I healed the blind man. It was the Sabbath after the feast, which had to be celebrated even much more strictly than no matter what other ordinary Sabbath. (P.S.: It was equally unfit for the Jews as it is now for you during the so-called octaves after the great Sunday and feast days). On such a Sabbath it was for the Pharisees an even greater offence to do some work.**

[21] **When the healed man stood before the Pharisees, those who brought him there related about all the wondrous things that had happened.**

[22] **After hearing this, the Pharisees turned to the healed man and asked him once more – although they already heard everything from the witnesses – how he became seeing again. And in order to confirm it one more time, they also asked it once more to the witnesses.**

[23] **And he said:** “He put mud on my eyes. Then I washed myself on His advice with the water of the pool of Siloam and I became seeing, just like I am now standing seeing before you.”

[24] **Upon that, a few Pharisees said:** “The Man who healed this blind man cannot be called by God (to be a prophet), for He does not keep such a high Sabbath and does not sanctify it.”

[25] **But the witnesses, and also some more intelligent Jews and Pharisees asked:** “But how is it possible that a sinful man can perform such signs?”

[26] **Because of that, there was discord and conflict among them.**

[27] **When they continued for some time disputing with each other and could not agree, those who declared that I was a sinful man,**

turned again to the man who was healed and asked him again (**the Pharisees**): "What do you say yourself about the One who opened your eyes?"

[28] **And he said**: "I am saying the same as those who brought me here, saying of Him: He is a prophet."

[29] **Then those who declared that I was a sinful man said (the Pharisees)**: "But we do not believe at all that he ever has been blind, but you arranged this among yourselves in order to provoke a disagreement between us."

[30] **Upon that, the witnesses said, and this very emphatically**: "This man still has his parents. He will know where they live. Let them come and ask them. They will know best if this man was ever able to see."

[31] **Then they let his parents come, who still did not know anything about the fact that their son had become seeing.**

[32] **They came quickly and the Pharisees asked them immediately a few subtle questions (the Pharisees)**: "Is this your son of whom you say that he was born blind? And if this is so, then how come that he can see now?"

[33] **The parents answered very simply**: "We know that this man is truly our son and that he was born blind, but how he now has become seeing and who opened his eyes, that we do not know. Yet, he is old enough. Therefore, let him speak for himself."

[34] **The parents, who already knew Me and suspected that I made their son seeing, gave this answer in the presence of the Pharisees and the Jews because they were afraid of them. For they knew that the chiefs and the arch Jews had already since long agreed that everyone who will confess that I am the Anointed of God must be most severely excommunicated. And therefore, it was more intelligent of the parents to say to the Pharisees and arch Jews: 'He is old enough. Ask him.'**

[35] **Then again, they called the man who had been blind, and said to him (the Pharisees)**: "Give all honor to God, because we know that the Man who made you seeing is a sinner."

[36] **But the man who was healed answered them**: "If that Man is

a sinner or not, I really do not know, but what I do know very well is that I was completely blind since my birth and was never able to distinguish the day from the night, and that I now, just like you, can see entirely everything.”

[37] **Then they said to him again** (the Pharisees): “Then tell us straightforward: what did this Man do with you and how did He open your eyes?”

[38] **The one who was healed said, visibly impatiently:** “I just told you. Did you then not listen to me? Why do you want to hear the same thing once more now? Do you perhaps wish to become His disciples? That would surely not harm you.”

[39] **Now the Pharisees and arch Jews of the temple became angry, cursed the man immediately because of this question and then said full of rage:** “Maybe you are a disciple of Him, but we are disciples of Moses! We know that God has spoken to Moses, but of this Man who made you seeing, we do not know where He comes from!”

[40] **The one who was healed however, looked at all of them with an inquiring look, and then said:** “But this is remarkable, the fact that you still do not know from where this Wonderworker comes from. And still, you can see undeniably that He gave me, who was born blind, the light in the eyes. This Man has probably done more of those signs and still you say that you do not know where He comes from?”

[41] **On this, the Pharisees and arch Jews of the temple said with a violent voice:** “We know that God does not hear sinners. God hears only a pious man who is without sin and who does God’s will in everything!”

[42] **Upon this, the one who was healed said:** “Hmm, strange. Nowhere in the world has it been heard that someone has – let us say – opened the eyes of someone who was born blind. If this Man would not be filled with such a might and power from God, truly, then He would not be able to accomplish such thing, just like you also are not able to open the eyes of someone who was born blind, although you say that you are disciples of Moses. If ever you

would be able to do such thing then the whole world would have known this for a long time, and then your houses would be completely filled with gold from top to bottom.”

[43] **At this answer of the healed man the Pharisees and the arch Jews of the temple became even more furious and they shouted literally out of rage: “What? Do you want to teach us while you came in this world afflicted with all sins!?”**

[44] **They grabbed him and pushed him with his parents and witnesses outside.**

[45] **When they were all outside, the one who was healed still cried loudly back at them: “May God repay you, you haughty ones, and may He bring light in the blindness of your soul.”**

[46] **However, they slammed the door and did not busy themselves anymore with the healed man who told them the truth right in their face.**

## **6. THE LORD TALKS TO THE ONE WHO WAS HEALED AND TO THE PHARISEES**



**OW this man came, of course with all those who accompanied him, immediately into the large temple hall where all the people were gathered. And everyone asked him what had happened to him in the counsel hall of the Pharisees and arch Jews.**

[2] **He told them completely freely and openly, and all who heard it became embittered because of the hardened hearts of the Pharisees and the Jews of the temple.**

[3] **So it also came to the ears of My disciples and also to Me that the Jews of the temple had thrown the healed man out of the temple, as well as the men who accompanied him.**

[4] **And I said to My disciples: “Let us look for him, so that this poor man can come to know Him who gave him back the light of the eyes.”**

[5] **We went, and soon found him among the people.**

[6] **But also some of the Pharisees, who were not so much against**

him, went after him to the large people's hall, to listen to what he would say there to the people and how the people would react on it.

[7] But I went immediately to stand before the one who was healed, and said to him: "Listen to Me, you who were pushed out by the Pharisees and the Jews of the temple. Do you believe in the Son of God?"

[8] Then **the one who was healed** answered: "Lord, who is it? Is He here in the temple? And is He the One who gave me the light of the eyes? Show Him to me, so that I can believe in Him."

[9] I said: "You have already seen Him, although not yet recognized. But He is the One who is now speaking to you."

[10] **Now the one who was healed** said: "Yes Lord, I do believe that. You are the One. When I came back from the pool I surely must have seen You, yet did not recognize You. If You were not the Son of God, Christ, the promised One, You could never make me, who was born blind, seeing again. Therefore I believe that You are truly the Son of God."

[11] Then he fell down on his knees before Me and was worshipping Me. But I told him to stand up again.

[12] When the Pharisees and several Jews of the temple who were standing around and who belonged to the more moderate group, heard from Me as well as from the one who was healed that I was the promised Anointed of God, they frowned their nose, and they were secretly very offended and embittered.

[13] But because I noticed it immediately I said aloud: "I came as a judgment into this world, that those who do not see become seeing, and those who can see become blind!"

[14] When **the Pharisees and the Jews of the temple**, who stood around Me, heard this, they could not restrain themselves anymore, opened their mouth and said to Me: "Are we then also already blind, or will we – based on what You said – become blind, because now we still can see?"

[15] Then I said: "If you were blind, as far as your soul is concerned, there would not be any sin on you, but because you



yourselves are giving testimony that you can see, your sin remains and sticks on you, and with that, judgment and eternal death, because I came into this world, sent by God as the Truth, the Light and the Life. Whoever believes in Me and acts according to My word, will have eternal life in him and will not see nor feel death.”

[16] (P.S.: What is discussed now in the temple was partly written down by the other evangelist writers, but not in the right order, for which reason their recordings were considered not to be agreeable with each other. And John did not write down the further developments because these things came back oftentimes in My speeches and were also written down as far as the most important points are concerned.

[17] The next chapter, the tenth (in the Bible), took place only 3 months later, again in the temple in Jerusalem, in the winter, during the time of the so-called Feast of the Sanctification of the Temple.

[18] This remark was necessary to let you know in which order My Word was spoken to the Jews and the Pharisees.

[19] Now that this has been made clear, I will now let follow the further developments of the conversation with the Jews and the Pharisees in the temple).

## 7. THE LORD DRAWS LIGHT UPON THE COUNTER-ARGUMENT OF THE PHARISEES



**UPON this, the Pharisees said:** “We can see indeed that You have a special power at Your disposal which was unknown until now. Especially concerning the healing of different human diseases which probably no doctor was able to heal. It is also not unknown to us that it seems even to be possible for You to call young people who had recently died back to life or to waken them up. And moreover, we also heard that You are a very sober, decent Man, and very charitable, and that for Your extraordinary healings You never have asked anything from anyone. Well, these are undeniably good and excellent

characteristics.

[2] But besides that, You claim of Yourself to be the Son of God and say that You are the promised Anointed of God, and moreover disregard the laws of Moses, and associate with gentiles, tax collectors and all kinds of sinners. Look, these are Your bad and very evil characteristics that can never be approved by the temple, because they keep the laws of Moses very strictly.

[3] Why do You exalt Yourself so much before the people because of Your special qualities, while clearly You also are only a man? Who can have any respect for You when You also want us to believe that You are the Son of God and the promised Anointed of God, and are condemning the one who for different reasons cannot believe that? You said that You are the Truth, the Light and the Life, but how can You prove to us that all this is indeed so? Give us a convincing proof, then we will believe in You.”

[4] **I said: “Now look at these stones which are lying all over the ground. I more easily can convince these stones that I am the One of who Moses and the prophets have prophesied, than you.**

**[5] If I am performing signs which no one has ever done before Me, not even the greatest prophet, then this should surely open up your eyes, so that you would recognize the signs of this time of your salvation. But you are blind, deaf and heart-hearted, and therefore you see, hear and feel nothing. And that is why judgment over you is in you, and together with that, the certain death of your souls.**

**[6] Every year you are whitewashing the graves of the forefathers and the prophets, but what the whitewashed graves are, that you are also. On the outside, you are indeed clothed with the law of Moses and Aaron on whose chairs you are sitting, but inside, you are full of decay and disgusting stench.**

**[7] You said that it is a bad and very evil characteristic of Mine to associate with gentiles, tax collectors and sinners, and that I am a violator of the Sabbath and do not keep the laws of Moses. But how do you keep his laws? I tell you that you do not keep the laws of Moses, not even in appearance. But you yourselves have**

established a great number of senseless and useless laws that you keep because it gives you material benefit and with which you are oppressing and exploiting the poor people. Did Moses prescribe that also to you? But if, according to the law of Moses, it is allowed and even prescribed to feed the donkey, the ox and the sheep, also on the Sabbath, and give them to drink, and if a donkey fell into a ditch or a pit, to get him out, would it then not be better and more reasonable to help a person in need, even on a Sabbath? Oh you blind, deaf and fools of heart and mind! Is for God perhaps man of less value than an animal?!

[8] Did Moses not give the following com-mandment: ‘Honor your father and your mother, that you may life long and that it may go well with you on Earth’? Then why are you saying to the children: ‘Come here and bring an offering to the temple which will be more beneficial to you.’ If this is your teaching, are you then acting according to the law of Moses?!

[9] Did Moses not solemnly give the com-mandment to everyone not to oppress the widows and orphans? But what are you doing? You are promising help to the widows and orphans through long prayers, which are supposedly answered, but in the mean time, you are seizing their possessions. And when the widows and orphans are crying and they come to you, complaining that your prayers are not working at all, you send them away saying that they are sinners for who God will not even hear the most fervent prayers. Tell Me, did Moses ever prescribe such a way of doing? You are acting against the laws of Moses in everything, and you say to Me that I am acting contrary to the laws of Moses?

[10] Look, since you differed so much from Moses, you are stricken with blindness, and now you cannot see anymore the clearest day that is visible before your eyes. And this is your judgment, your death and your damnation. With your empty, very expensive prayers you were sucking out the mosquitoes, and by that you are devouring whole camels, and still you are saying that you are disciples of Moses. But how can you be disciples of Moses if you – as already said – act contrary to all the laws of Moses,

worse than all the gentiles? Therefore, the light will be taken away from you and given to the gentiles.

[11] I came into this world to lead you in the most kind and loving way on the right paths of life by teaching and deeds. But you are persecuting Me wherever I go or stand, and you try to catch and kill Me, while you claim that I am a deceiver of the people and an agitator. But I also have witnesses, and God Himself who is in Me, just as I am in Him, is My witness that you all are evil liars before God and all the people.

[12] If the Romans, who are now the earthly rulers in that country of those who should be in fact the children of God, had noticed in the least that I am an agitator, they would have brought Me to court a long time ago, because with their sharp eyes they can see and perceive all things that might somehow become a danger to their sovereignty. But because they have not discovered the least of all the things of which you are accusing Me, they come to meet Me everywhere very friendly, and prove that they are men full of faith, love and respect regarding Me, My teaching and My deeds. And therefore they also will be accepted in My Light and My Life, but you will be cast into outer darkness, just like it is written, and there will be much wailing and gnashing of teeth.”

[13] **When I had said this, also the more or less moderate Jews and Pharisees became angry and said:** “Now look how absurd You are talking! Who is persecuting You and who tries to kill You!?! If You teach something good and are doing good to the people, nobody will persecute You and also no one wants to kill You. But if You as a man, just like we are also only men, portray Yourself as a Son of God, thus as the promised One, the Anointed of God – what according to the prophets means as much as Jehovah Himself – You Yourself must surely perceive that we have to regard this as the worst blasphemy until You have given us sufficient proof that You are truthfully the promised Anointed One of God, and that we can believe in You, or else You must, before us and the people, withdraw the testimony about Yourself. But as long as You will do neither one nor the other, You will have to put

up with being persecuted by the temple as a blasphemer. Are we not right when we are exposing this now in the presence of all the people?”

[14] I said: “So, you have spoken now, and for sure, as a completely blind one speaks about the colors of the light. And because you are judging and speaking like that, you are therefore also proclaiming your own judgment. I will not judge you, but the word, which I have spoken already so often in vain to you, that will judge you.

[15] If you read the prophet Isaiah and understood only a little of it, then you must know what it means: ‘A virgin will bear us a Son and His name will be ‘Emanuel’, which means ‘God with us’. Is this now, as well as all the other things, not precisely being fulfilled by Me? And when this is so, and will also eternally never be otherwise, would I then not be just like you a liar if I now, because of your dark opinion, would confess that I am not the One who I am for God, for all Heavens and for all created beings here on Earth?

[16] On the other hand, you want from Me such proof that would convince you irrevocably and as clear as the sunlight that I am the promised Anointed One of God. Then tell Me, how do I have to accomplish that with your total blindness?

[17] When I perform before your eyes works and deeds which were never performed by anyone else before Me. When I am healing the paralyzed and lame, and they are then jumping around fully healed and strong like deer. And when I moreover heal people who suffer from gout and leprosy, give full hearing and ability to speak to the deaf and dumb, make the blind to see, set the possessed ones free from their terrible tormentors, even raising the dead by the might of My word, and by occasion perform still many other deeds which are possible to no one else except to God, and moreover preach to the poor of spirit the gospel of the lively coming of the Kingdom of God on Earth, and when no one can accuse Me to have ever committed a sin, and then you say that I perform all this with the help of Beelzebub, the greatest of all

devils, then I am asking you what other signs I still can perform before your eyes to make you believe that I am truthfully the Anointed One of God?

[18] Even if I would perform a 1,000 and another 1,000 other signs before you, then you would say again that I am doing all this with the help of the greatest of all devils. What use would it be to perform more signs with such a great blindness of yours? I am telling you: as one cannot give any notion of color to a blind person, so also one cannot give you any proof that I truthfully am the Anointed One of God.

[19] And look, this evil night in your souls is then your ruin, your own judgment and your true death. For I alone am the Way, the Light, the Truth and eternal Life. Whoever believes in Me and will live and act according to My word, will receive from Me the Spirit of eternal life, and I alone will call him to life on his youngest day in My Kingdom. However, he who runs away from Me, who despises and persecutes Me, will also run away, despise and persecute his own life and cannot receive it from no matter where but simply and solely from Me.

[20] Consequently, he who does not want to accept from Me the eternal life of his soul, and resists against all that which comes from Me, will also stay dead eternally.

[21] But he who wants to have life must take it from Him who is Life Himself, thus the One who has life and who can give it to whomever He wills. However, he gives life only to those who thirst for it.

[22] My word and My teaching now are life, which at present is offered to all people. Thus, whoever – as already said – truthfully accepts My word and My teaching, accepts from Me also the life of the soul.

[23] Now, if this is the case with eternal life as I have explained to you now and to all the others, and it is not otherwise, then from where do you want to receive the eternal life of your soul for which you are hoping?"

## 8. A PHARISEE EXPLAINS HIS PHILOSOPHY OF LIFE



**PHARISEE**, who thought to be a very wise man, said:

“Well, by these words of Yours I can now really see that You are talking like a madman who does not have, and also cannot have, any idea of the true nature of God, of His endless wisdom, power and greatness and of the way upon which He arranged the circumstances of this world and its creatures. Because look, You claim that the eternal life of the soul of a human being depends only on the full faith in You, in Your word and in Your teaching, and that every soul who does not do that can expect eternal death – which is mostly the case because without his fault he knows and also cannot know anything about You. Now, then You are, and also the God who sent You into this world, the most unwise and unjust almighty being that a reasonable man can imagine.

[2] Can those people, who have lived hundreds and thousands of years before us, help it if they impossibly could have heard anything of Your teaching, which is the only thing that can give life to all souls? Those people are thus, according to Your word, without exception, in eternal death?

[3] And further, can these numerous nations that exist and survive somewhere on this big Earth, help it if maybe within 1.000 years they still will not have heard one syllable of Your teaching? We must then conclude that those poor people will also be dead forever.

[4] Then finally Your God with all His inscrutable deep wisdom and goodness and with all the things that He created will have the greatest joy and find His greatest pleasure in killing and completely destroying, after a short existence, all His very wisely equipped created beings.

[5] Then why did a Moses come and all the other prophets? What were these laws of Moses then good for, which were at all times difficult to keep? And what was the use of those many plagues that God brought down on the Jews and other people each time when

they did not act and live according to His revealed will?

[6] I mean: for the receiving of the eternal life of the soul after the departure from the body every dog's life would almost have been good enough. Why would you educate people and train them spiritually? For the receiving of a certain eternal death of man's soul after the death of the body, man needs nothing else except – just like the animals – to have his daily food. Then why would one teach people to think, make conclusions and reason? That would undeniably embitter their miserable existence. All the people who are now spiritually called would unfortunately even have to strangle their children immediately after their birth, so that later, when they are grown up and able to think and are conscious of themselves, would not be plagued with all kinds of things and would also never have to fear to lose forever their often sweet tasting life.

[7] I confess here openly that, according to Your teaching, I owe in no way any gratitude to the God that is preached by You, because He did not place me on this world for some continuous happiness, but only for the greatest unhappiness that will embitter my whole life. The sooner He will destroy me again, the greater the favor He will show me.

[8] And frankly, to receive an eternal life of the soul by way of exception by believing Your word and Your teaching, I do not want at all, because I, as an eternally living soul, will have in mind that multitudes of people are destroyed by Your God forever. Then I endlessly more prefer an eternal non-existence instead of a miserable eternal existence.

[9] If ever You are capable of even one sound thought, You and Your blind disciples will realize by my words that Your teaching is even less suitable for the true happiness of people than the teaching of the Sadducees who conformed their teaching with that of the Greek worldly philosopher Diogenes. That teaching is more comforting to everyone than Your teaching, according to which one should only believe in You to attain to the eternal life of the soul. Truly, never will any true friend of the people be grateful to



You for that teaching of Yours. And now all the people in the temple and also outside of the temple must decide if ever I spoke even one incorrect word to You. Answer me, if You can!”

## 9. THE ETERNAL LIFE OF THE SOULS



WITH a serious expression on My face I said: “You dare to say many unjust and untrue things right in My face in front of the people. If I would be equally inclined to anger as you Jews and Pharisees, I would repay these brutal, untrue, meaningless and proud words in such a manner that the people would be astonished, because in this way they would quickly realize that all might and authority in Heaven and on Earth is given to Me. However, I am meek with all My heart and full of humility, and in front of the people I will only punish you with My word.

[2] You accused Me of madness because I am teaching that the one who believes in Me and lives according to My teaching will have eternal life in him, and whoever does not believe in Me and does not live according to My word will have judgment within himself and with it, eternal death.

[3] Dumb and blind Pharisee. What is then according to your highest material imagination the eternal life of the soul in My Kingdom – which is not of this world – and what is then judgment, and with it, eternal death?

[4] If you understood this mystery you would speak differently and have another opinion, but because your soul is blind and your heart full of darkness, you are judging about spiritual things as someone who is born-blind, forming an opinion about the luster of colors.

[5] Is then for you the eternal death of the soul and its, let us say, impossible total eternal destruction, one and the same? Look, you and all your colleagues are, for what your souls are concerned, totally and completely dead for already a long time. But are you therefore also destroyed? You will never be destroyed, but you will remain the same as you are now – in your sins, and this is the death

of the soul, because in such a state one can never ascend to a higher and purer awareness but must remain in his darkness and in his old worldly doubts of which your souls are full.

[6] In this world it does not oppress you so much because you know very well how to comfort yourselves with all things of the world, but when your soul will soon be without an earthly body in the spiritual world in his own sphere, which proceeds from himself and which is without love and without light in him, how will he then fare?

[7] I know this very well and know also all too well how you all entirely deviated from God's word. And for this reason, as promised, I Myself came into this world, in the flesh of a human being. I, who am in spirit the same One who gave Moses the laws on the Sinai, as well as once to Adam and later after the flood to Noah, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and also after Moses to the many prophets. By My teaching, I came to save you all from your judgment and death, because despite all patriarchs, despite Moses and all prophets you end up in the hard imprisonment of sin and death.

[8] When I am teaching you now Myself – because all My messengers that I sent to your people were not able to accomplish anything – am I therefore a madman? O, you serpents and brood of vipers, how long will I still have to suffer you in your judgment and your death?

[9] You think that the people who lived before Me could not hear the word which I am now directing to you, and therefore could not believe in Me and consequently could also not receive eternal life, as well as those who are now living in the faraway countries and are mostly gentiles. O you blind Pharisee. Now look here. These 7 men from the far Upper-Egypt know Me. They live according to My will, and their souls have eternal life and its inexhaustible power and might for already a long time. They will give you a sign.”

[10] Now **the first Upper-Egyptian** came forward and said: “Listen, miserable fornicator and adulterer! 10 forefathers out of

whom you came forth will appear to tell you that they are in a most miserable condition in the beyond, but are not destroyed.”

[11] **Then those who were called, stood suddenly in a dreadful appearance around the Pharisee. And his father, whom he recognized very well, said: ‘Since I was the same as you are now, I am now in such miserable condition as you can see me now, and you will be in the same miserable condition as I am and as all forefathers are now and who will certainly also stay that way, because neither faith nor hope are shining upon us.’**

[12] **The Pharisee, being very surprised, asked: “Can you then never more be helped?”**

[13] **The spirit said: “O yes, if we want it, but we do not have the will for that, just like you also do not have it in this world and persecute Him who could help you. And we are doing the same.”**

[14] **Now the spirits disappeared and I said: “What do you think about this?”**

[15] **Then the Pharisee said: “You are all sorcerers and magicians, and you performed this appearance with witchcraft. Therefore I do not want to involve myself with You anymore and I will withdraw myself.”**

[16] **The people said however: “His wisdom is unmasked. That is why he is now withdrawing full of shame.”**

[17] **Now the Jews of the temple rebuked the noisy crowd, but they became noisier and they started to hiss and to whistle. Then the Pharisees withdrew hastily.**

[18] **However, the people asked Me if I wanted to teach them.**

[19] **I urged the people to be quiet and soon they became quiet. Then I began to teach the people about the love for God and for fellowman and warned them against the false doctrine of the Pharisees.**

## 10. A NEW PLAN OF THE TEMPLE SERVANTS TO CATCH THE LORD



FEW spies, who hid themselves among the people, informed the Pharisees that I was teaching this way, and they deliberated among themselves to know what they could do to catch Me and bring Me to ruin.

[2] **However, the more temperate ones said:** “Of course, you can do what you want, but we can assure you in advance that you can do nothing against Him. Because first of all He has many followers among the people, and secondly He possesses an indescribable magic power by which all the powers of nature and the spirit world seem to obey Him. And thirdly He is so well versed in the Scriptures, that we, compared to Him, are all bunglers. Fourthly, the high-ranking Romans are on His side, because they surely take Him for a half-god. Also, He has those wondrous Egyptians, Persians, Arabians, Indians and still other men from the east around Him, and therefore it will be very difficult to undertake anything successful against Him. And in case you do not want to believe me, then you should go outside to be informed about everything and convince yourself.

[3] Did those two very reliable Pharisees not go to Emmaus, together with two of our smartest Levites? Where are they now? We do not know. The day before yesterday we sent our most reliable spies and chasers after them and insisted that they should inform us before evening to know what they were able to find out, but up to this hour nobody came back. Where are they? How terribly embarrassing were those appearances to us the night of the day before yesterday. Who is responsible for that, other than Him and His collaborators?

[4] Today 3 rising suns put us and the whole people into great confusion. Also this seems to be caused by Him. Everything we came to know from other places about Him and His deeds seems to be confirmed by Him, and therefore it is useless to make plans to do violence to Him. If He only were a little afraid of us, He

surely would not consider appearing openly in the temple with His teaching, for He knows as well as we do how severe we are against such people. So this is our sober opinion, but because of the majority of your votes you still can do what you want. We will in no way hinder you.

[5] However, when we think soberly – as always – we believe the following: if ever His mission would perhaps secretly be ordained by God, we will not be able to stop Him. But if it is only the work of men, then it will go away by itself in the dust of forgetfulness. If our words can do nothing against Him, our actions will be even less successful.”

[6] **Now an arch Pharisee of the group of Caiphas said:** “If all this is true, as you brought forward with a good intention, then according to you, what can we do for the best, because we cannot allow these things to happen that will cause our downfall?”

[7] **Upon this, the more temperate one said:** “If we cannot unmask Him in front of the people and the Romans with intelligent and well worked out questions and words, and make Him suspect, then we are as good as finished. By actions, we absolutely will not be able to harm Him. This is our firm and well founded opinion.”

[8] **Upon this, the arch Pharisee said:** “This advice sounds good and we can indeed try it out, because we still have enough of those clever, intelligent and good orators, although lately we lost quite a few very skillful orators, which is probably caused by that notorious Nazarene. Then who of us thinks that he is able to take this task upon him for a big reward?”

[9] **Now a scribe and a Pharisee, who also knew the Roman laws very well, came forward, and they both said:** “Let us carry out this task, then we can catch Him fast and easily, for nobody was yet too smart for us.”

[10] **The whole counsel agreed on that, and Caiphas said with great seriousness:** “Good. Then disguise yourselves, so that the people will not recognize you. Enter the temple through the big gate of the people, and do your job well, then I and God will be well-pleased with you.”

[11] Now, as Caiphas told them, they both disguised themselves and went into the temple where I was still teaching the people about the love for God and fellowman. But the high priests (chiefs), the Pharisees and still a few scribes did not totally trust the two, and they also disguised themselves and went after them into the temple in order to witness how those two would work on Me. They joined them in the temple.

## 11. THE PHARISEES TRY TO CATCH THE LORD



WHEN I was resting for awhile, **the two** came immediately and stood before Me and asked Me in a brutal way: “Lord, we know that You are performing extraordinary things which before You were never performed by a human being. Now tell us by which authority You can do this, because You as Master will surely know best by which power and means it is possible to perform all these wondrous works.”

[2] I said: “O yes, this I know very well, and I also want to tell you. But first I want to ask you something. If you are able to give Me a correct answer to the question which I will ask you, I will also tell you by which authority I perform My works.”

[3] **The two** said: “You can certainly ask us. We will not hold back any answer.”

[4] I said: “Very well then. Tell Me then freely and openly in front of all the people: from where was the baptism of John, the son of Zachariah, who was strangled in this temple by you between the altar and the most holy? Was the baptism of that John from Heaven or only from men? Because it is up to you to make a final statement in front of the people. You put on other clothes and came through the big people’s gate together with other pilgrims, but you were nevertheless quickly recognized. Do your work well, because otherwise you will lose your reward that was promised to you and that you can receive when you can catch Me on what I will answer.”

[5] This gave them something to think about, and they quietly said

among themselves (**the Pharisees**): “This is a nasty fine question. For if, because of the people, we say: John’s baptism was from Heaven, then He and the people will ask us: ‘If this is so, then why did you not believe him and why did you persecute him and did you convince Herod to throw him first into jail and let him then be beheaded?’ But if we say that the baptism was from man, then all the people will rise against us, because the people still consider John as a true prophet, and they would attack us for saying something like that about John. Therefore, it is difficult to give this Man a good answer.”

[6] **Furthermore, another said secretly**: “A good idea came into my mind now. Whether we say one thing or the other, in both cases we will be trapped. We must make it appear as if such outgrowth and miscarriages of the corrupt Jewry never kept us busy, because this is far below our dignity. And to make a long story short, we very simply will say: this we do not know, because such an unimportant event regarding the temple never kept us busy.”

[7] **When they had decided that, the two turned to Me again and said**: “Master, we cannot answer Your question at all, because we do not know from who was the baptism of John, because frankly, we did not keep ourselves too busy with that.”

[8] **I said to them**: “Well, if you do not want to tell Me this, I also will not tell you by which authority I am performing My works.”

[9] **But what do you think of this: look, a man had two sons. He went to the first one and said: ‘My son, go today to my vineyard to work.’ But the son said: ‘Father, this I do not want, because the hard work is too much for me.’ When his father was gone, the son regretted this. He stood up, went to the vineyard and worked during the whole day with all his strength.**

[10] **Now the father went to his second son and also said the same to him as to the first one. And this one answered: ‘Lord and father. Yes, I will go to it immediately to work.’ But when the father left, his son stayed at home and did not go to the vineyard to work. Who of the two sons fulfilled here the will of the father?”**

[11] **They both said:** “This is truly a childish question. Of course, it is clear that the first son fulfilled the will of his father. Because by answering that he did not want to go, he surely only wanted to pleasantly surprise his father. Because what one says is unmistakably less important than what one does. But for what purpose is this likeness? What did You want to tell us and show us with this?”

[12] **I said:** “Sure, I will explain it to you, if you are so blind that you cannot see that for yourself. The Father is the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. And of both sons the first one means: the true prophets called by God who in the beginning however were not happy with their calling – as Moses showed all too clearly by refusing this high office because he had such difficulty in speaking, and for this reason he asked God to give him his brother Aaron as interpreter. But then, it was still Moses who did the work. The second called one was the spokesman indeed, but only Moses did the work. And so it went downhill until these times.

[13] Because the second category, which made the promise to work in God’s vineyard, but only promised to work and finally did do nothing, God had to turn to those who were not so willing with their tongue. Although these ones did not give Him any promise, yet they worked. And when they worked, the second group attacked and persecuted them out of jealousy, and they wanted to prevent them from doing the good work, so that the true workers would not be accepted as such by the Father of the vineyard.

[14] And so, in this time, Zachariah and his son John were good workers in the vineyard of the Lord, although in the beginning of their inner calling each one of them refused to take this function upon them because surely they knew the great laziness and burning envy of those who indeed promised God to work in the vineyard, but were then putting their hand into their lazy lab. And not only did they not work themselves, but with fire and sword they also forbade the zealous workers to work.

[15] Therefore, I say to you: truly, truly, tax collectors and whores



will surely come sooner in Heaven than you. John came to teach you the good way and you did not believe him, just like your forefathers did not believe the old prophets. But the tax collectors and whores believed John, did penance and changed their lives. You certainly saw this and understood also that you were wrong, but still, you did not do what the tax collectors did, because above all you did not want it to be known that you also believed on him. Therefore, also the tax collectors and whores will enter God's Kingdom sooner than you who attach great importance to your calling and are proud in front of everyone as if you had helped God with the creation of Heaven and Earth.

[16] But I say to you: precisely for this reason you are the last for God. Because everything that is great and glittering in the eyes of the world, is for God an abomination. You do not want to be in Heaven and moreover you are blocking the way for those who want to enter. Therefore, all the more damnation will later come over you.

[17] I am saying to you that I have the right and the power for this and I do not fear the people of this world like you. Because I know God and the power of His will which is now in Me that wills and acts. But you do not know God, and His will is not in you. And therefore, you fear the world and act according to what it prescribes in your hearts. And since you are doing this, you are therefore also preparing your own judgment, your damnation and with it the true, eternal death. And this consists of the fact that you stay continuously the slaves of your increasing laziness and sensuality and you will reap its wicked and terrible fruits."

[18] **One of the two** said: "You are talking freely and openly with us, who are men just like You. If it pleased God to create us people only for Hell, He surely could have spared Himself the trouble, because not one soul will praise Him for that. But we are of the opinion that God still created men for something better, and therefore we are hoping that He, as the most wise and perfect Being, will not want to torture us forever with all the sufferings of Hell, because we were forced to act that way by insurmountable

difficulties.

[19] The fact that we cannot believe the many that are pretending to be a prophet, has a very understandable reason, because if the temple would do that, it would be no more a meeting-place of the Jews who still believe in Moses. Why does a prophet, who is filled with all the power of God, allow himself to be taken by the Jews and even let himself be killed? If this happens, then almost each time his disciples turn away from him – as we know out of experience – and then they become again Jews, just like they were before the arrival of the prophet. Then why does God allow such thing?

[20] If the prophets are pre-eminently His awakened and called workers and we represent the same lazy son who promised his father to work in the vineyard but who did not hold on to his word, then how come that the by God so highly esteemed workers still let themselves be defeated by us lazy loafers. How could Your God allow this to happen?”

## 12. THE PARABLE OF THE WORKERS IN THE VINEYARD



SAID: “God gave to every human being a completely free will, together with an intellect and a conscience that always warns and admonishes him. Without these 3 things man would not be more than an animal.

[2] But in order to test man’s free will, also the laziness and self-love are inborn in his flesh wherein he feels most comfortable in this world.

[3] With his own power, man should learn to perceive that this is bad for his soul, and with the means that were given by God he should fight against it until he becomes a perfect master over all his bodily passions and tendencies. But to the sensual and lazy man this is too uneasy and unpleasant. He prefers as much as possible to let himself be ensnared into the nets of his growing sensual passions, and by that, he draws thousands to him, because it also pleases them to bath their flesh in all laziness and sensual

pleasure.

[4] But what is the evil consequence of this? Instead of freeing himself from the shackles of matter by acting as God has advised him, and finally even to spiritualize that which is material and to make himself truly alive, the soul is going deeper and deeper into the death of his matter.

[5] When this happens in general too often with people, God has mercy on them, and at the right moment He always sends them people to wake them up. But when they begin their task, the many lazy people become furious with them, fall upon them and even mistreat and strangle them in their blind rage, so that they can continue to sleep in their laziness, which pleases their flesh so much.

[6] But since God created man only for eternal life and not for eternal death, He continues to send different messengers in order to wake up the lazy and sensual people, so that these should get up and start the heavy work which will make their soul alive.

[7] If they do not listen to the warning prophets but when these are rather continuously persecuted, then God will quickly send other and sharper circumstances to wake them up, like bad harvest, high cost of living, wars, famine and epidemics, and still many other plagues.

[8] If the people repent and become active again according to the godly advice, then soon God will remove the plagues again. But if they do not care, then God has still bigger awakening methods in store, and these are then like the flood of Noah and the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah.

[9] So if you persist in your sins till the measure is full, you too can expect the last big and terrible awakening method. Now I have told you this, so that you very well will remember My words when it will come over you.”

[10] **The two** said: “Then what evil are we doing, that such things have to come over us?”

[11] **I** said: “I will immediately show you in a parable the things you are doing and also those you have always done. Therefore,

listen to Me.

[12] Once there was a wise father of the house who laid out a vineyard and put a strong fence around it. Moreover he dug out a place where the grapes had to be pressed and build a strong tower on it where many people were able to live. When all this was done and when they promised loyalty, sincerity, diligence and zeal to him, he handed everything over to the vine growers, and they were promised a very good reward with which the vine growers were very pleased. And because the father of the house had still many other things to do, he could easily travel through the country, because he let everything behind in an excellent condition.

[13] Now when the time of the harvest was at hand, he sent his servants (prophets and teachers) to the vineyard to receive the fruits. But when the vine growers – who promised the father of the house complete loyalty, sincerity, diligence and zeal – saw the servants, they were deliberating with one another in this way: ‘Well, we are many and it will not be difficult to settle with them, then we can easily divide the harvest among ourselves.’ All the evil vine growers agreed upon that and seized the servants who were sent by their lord to receive the fruits. They beat one of them, killed the other and threw stones at the third one.

[14] When the father of the house heard that, he became angry and sent more helpers to it, but now more than the first time. And see, the vine growers seized them also and treated them in the say way as they treated the first ones.

[15] When the father of the house heard that also, he became really sad and considered to bring a hard judgment upon them or, because of his great goodness and patience, try once more to urge the vine growers to freely hand over his fruits. He said by himself: ‘I know what I shall do. I will send my only son to them. Him they will respect, and they will do according to his justified request.’

[16] But when the vine growers saw the son, they were deliberating among themselves: ‘That is the heir. Come, let us kill him also. Then we will have his inheritance.’ And they caught him, put him outside of the vineyard and killed him on the spot.

[17] And what do you think, what will the lord of the vineyard do with these evil vine growers if later he will come to them himself with great power?"

[18] **The two said:** "He will kill all the evil-doers in a cruel way, and he surely will entrust his vineyard to other vine growers who will hand over the fruits on time."

[19] **I said:** "This time your opinion is good and true. But do you also know that by the vineyard the church has to be understood which God as the named father of the house has established by Moses? And that you priests, are the evil vine growers who were mentioned right now, and that the servants are the many prophets who God sent to you, and that I am now the Heir of the Father, about whom you are now deliberating day after day how you can catch Him, put Him out of His inheritance and also how you can kill Him, so that then you can rule undisturbed on His throne and divide the fruits of His vineyard among yourselves?"

[20] **Then the two said:** "Then where are those who want to kill You, if You are truly the heir? We did not come here to catch You or to kill You, but we seriously came to examine if according to the full truth You are really the One who was promised. We have to keep watch on the threshold of the old door of the church, so that in this time of many wonders where the Essenes and also other magicians bring in their good harvest, there would not be a false Christ, enchanting and deceiving the blind and credulous people with his false teaching. And he who cannot resist our trial of fire is an intruder and a deceiver, and we have the right to catch him and to throw him out.

[21] If You are the true Christ, then why does it offend You if we in front of the people are testing You? If we discover that no deceit is clinging on to You, of no matter what kind, then we will introduce You before the whole people as the One You introduce to us. But if we discover with our discernment that it is only Yourself who claims to be something special, for instance because of Your secret magic, then it is our duty, given by God, to reject You as an imposter and blasphemer, and to punish You according

to the law. But how can You treat us like this by comparing us to the evil vine growers and to make us in this way suspicious in front of the whole people?”

[22] **I** said: “Because I have all reason for that and am not afraid of you. But I will explain this reason for you even further. As you are now, and as you are behaving now, this was also the case a long time ago. Also those, who lived during that time (your ancestors), considered themselves to be the entire lawful watchers and workers of God’s vineyard. But no matter how and where they worked, they always kept the fruits for themselves and distorted the law of God, and even changed it for a worldly law to their own worldly advantage.

[23] Then God sent prophets to them, and they were persecuted by them with fire and sword by always telling the people that they were false prophets. And all those who accepted the teaching of the prophets and lived according to it, were said to be breakers of the law and blasphemers.

[24] Only 100 years later, the prophets who were persecuted by them were considered to be true prophets by the priests of that day. Monuments were erected for them, which even today you are whitewashing every year, but only out of apparent respect. However, now you believe as little the word of the prophets as the former priests of that time. And as they persecuted the old prophets, so you also are persecuting the prophets who are send to you, and you proclaim that they are false prophets, reject and kill them.

[25] And when you do that – which you cannot deny – am I then not correct if I put you on the same level as those evil vine growers whose lives will indeed be taken by the Lord of the vineyard according to your own judgment? Indeed, you are watchers, but then of a kind that watch before a robbers’ den.

[26] What do you care about pleasing God in whom you never believed? The only important thing for you is your honor before the world, because it produces a lot of gold, silver and precious stones, and moreover the first and the best produce of the land. For

if you would believe in God, you also would keep His laws, wherein it is stated: ‘You will not covet what belongs to your fellowman’, and: ‘You shall not kill’. But you covet and take immediately what belongs to your fellowman and what he earned in the sweat of his face. And whoever does not want to give what you want, you are persecuting, even worse than hungry wolves after a lamb. And the one who warns you that you are acting incorrectly – because he was awakened by God for that reason – is seized by you and killed.

[27] The fact that you are acting like this and not otherwise, I do not only know Myself, but this is known now to everyone, and people weep and mourn because of your unmerciful hardness. You put unbearable burdens on the shoulders of the poor people, but you yourself are not touching them with one finger.

[28] Say to the people here, if Moses or another prophet ever gave you a law by which you are allowed to behave in such a brutal and unscrupulous way. Where is it written that you can appropriate the possessions of the widows and orphans in exchange for long prayers that you promise to them? And where did Moses command to proclaim that true prophets are false ones, to persecute and to kill them?

[29] And if you are doing all these things, which you can never deny, it is clear to everyone that you are the evil vine growers that I mentioned.”

[30] Now the two Pharisees and also the others became enraged because I pointed this out to them, and **all the people** said: “Yes, yes, He speaks the full truth! This is exactly how it is and not differently!”

[31] **When the people said this aloud, the two said in a threatening manner:** “Tell us, who are You, that You dare to say this right in our face in front of the people. Do you not know our rights and our power? How long will You test our patience?”

[32] **I said:** “I am the One who is talking to you now. I really do not fear your power because your imagined justice for God and all honest people is the highest injustice. But concerning patience, you

rather should ask how long I will have the patience that you think you have with Me. Because all authority and power in Heaven and on Earth has been given to Me. My will can throw you into ruin and in the fire of My wrath, but you cannot do anything to Me because I can throw you into ruin much sooner than you are capable of hurting Me even with one finger. Yes, when I, because of your great evilness, will allow that you will put your wicked hands on Me, then also the day of your judgment and ruin will have come.”

### 13. THE PHARISEES ASK FOR GOD’S KINGDOM



**ONE of the two** said: “What kind of blasphemous nonsense are You uttering. Are we then not the builders who were appointed by Moses and Aaron in order to build God’s house on Earth, as it is written?”

[2] I said: “Yes, yes, this is indeed written, but there is also written something else, and since you started with the builders, I will tell you what that is. What is written and what you certainly also know – because you also read it in the Scriptures – sounds as follows: ‘The stone that the builders rejected became the cornerstone. This is accomplished to the Lord and is now wonderfully visible before your eyes.’ Therefore, I say to you: God’s Kingdom will be taken away from you and will be given to the gentiles, and they will bear its fruits.”

[3] Then the two said: “Then what will further happen to the cornerstone for who You seem to take Yourself?”

[4] I said: To the stone that is rejected by you, which nevertheless has become a cornerstone now, this will happen: the one who will fall upon the cornerstone, like you now, will crash. However, on who the cornerstone will fall – what you can expect – will be crushed. Do you understand this now?”

[5] After I had given this explanation, also the other high priests and Pharisees who were present came to understand that they were the ones who would be crushed by the cornerstone which should



fall upon them. They were then very upset and deliberated among themselves how maybe they still could trick Me and bring Me to ruin.

[6] But the more temperate ones advised them against it and pointed out that all the people were taking Me for a great prophet, and that for this reason I already had sufficiently made it clear what the high priests and the Pharisees had always done to the prophets. Therefore, they found it more advisable to trick Me first in My own words, to declare Me thereby before the people to be a liar and imposter and only then to catch Me and deliver Me to court, since the people could then have no more objections. But as long I could not be tricked with words it would be extremely risky to capture Me, especially now when the people was still too excited because of the nightly signs.

[7] The high priest and Pharisees were realizing that. They suppressed their anger and decided to catch Me with cunning words.

[8] After they had taken this decision, they turned to Me again, with a kind of gentleness, because they were very afraid of the people, and were asking Me (the Pharisees): “From a Master who is so well versed in the Scripture, we also would like to hear wherein the Kingdom of God will consist, which will be taken away from us and given to the gentiles with whom it will bear the desired fruit. What is in fact the Kingdom of God? What do You mean by that? Is it Heaven, where all believers hope to come after the death of their body, or does it already exist somewhere on this Earth, which, according to Your words, seems to be the case, because otherwise it could not be given to the gentiles. It can certainly not be a true spiritual Heaven, because it is nowhere written that also the dark gentiles will ever be accepted into God’s Heaven. These words coming out of Your prophetic mouth were a bit puzzling to us, for which reason we are also inviting You to explain this further to us.”

[9] Here they were already rejoicing, because they thought that with these words I already had entrapped Myself and that on such a

clever question I could have no answer. Also here and there the people were looking seriously and were anxiously waiting how I would save Myself from this trap.

[10] But I stood up as a hero and no embarrassment could be seen on My face, and I started once again to speak to them in parables: “Since you are full of laziness, full of sensuality and selfish pride, it is therefore also impossible to understand the secret and the truth of the Kingdom of God. You are imagining Heaven to be one or the other exquisite space above the stars, where the pious souls are accepted or – according to a still more foolish and absurd idea which some of you have – only after many thousands of years on the by you never understood youngest day, after which they then will revel forever in the most pleasurable life. And from such a heaven that exists nowhere except in your more than foolish fantasy and highest selfish belief, the gentiles are to be excluded. Yes, I say to you, from such a heaven as you are imagining yourselves, they also will be excluded forever, since it is impossible to be accepted into a heaven that in reality exists nowhere.

[11] But, so that no one can ever find an excuse by claiming that he did not know wherein true Heaven consist, I will now, for the sake of the people, show in images wherein the true Heaven consist, everywhere in the whole of infinity and here on this Earth, in and above all stars, everywhere in the same manner. So listen to Me.”

#### **14. THE PARABLE OF THE KING AND HIS WEDDING FEAST**



HE Kingdom of Heaven or God’s Kingdom is like a king who prepared a wedding feast for his son. He sent out his helpers and servants to invite many important guests for the royal wedding feast. But those who were invited said to themselves: ‘Why should we go to a royal wedding feast? We feel better at home and then we owe no one any gratitude.’ And for this

reason no one of those who were invited wanted to come to the royal wedding feast.

[2] When the king received the message that the guests who were invited first did not want to come, he sent out again other helpers, telling them beforehand: ‘Tell the guests: Look, I have prepared my wedding feast. My oxen and fat cattle are slaughtered and everything is ready. So come all of you to the wedding feast.’

[3] The helpers left and told it faithfully to the guests they had to invite. But again those who were invited ignored the invitation and despised it. One went to his field, the other started another work, and again others seized the helpers, scorned them, and even killed some of them.

[4] When the king heard that, in his justified wrath he immediately sent out his armies and killed all those murderers, burned their city and leveled it with the ground.

[5] After that, the king spoke again to his helpers: ‘It is true that the wedding feast is well prepared but the invited guests were not worthy of it. Therefore, go now to all the common streets and alleys, and invite anyone to the wedding that you will find.’

[6] The helpers left and brought all those they could find, the bad and the good ones. And look, the tables were all occupied.

[7] Now when the tables were occupied in this manner, the king came into the large dining hall to see the guests. There he saw someone who by far was not wearing a garment that is fit for a wedding feast, while all the others, at the time they were invited, went quickly home to make them look as nice as possible for the wedding.

[8] Then the king asked the helpers: ‘Why did this man over there not dress himself nicely for the wedding, to refresh my eyes and not to give any offence to the many other guests?’

[9] And the helpers said: ‘O mighty king, he is one of those who was invited first and who did not want to come. Now when we went to invite people for the third time, we also met him in the street, invited him once more and advised him to dress himself also nicely for the wedding. But he said: ‘Ah why? I am not going

to make all possible effort because of the wedding. I will go to it as I am.’ And as we met him in the street, he also went together with the other guests to the wedding, and we did not stop him since we have no right to do this.’

[10] When the king heard this from the helpers, he went to the one who did not have a wedding garment and he said to him: ‘How could you come here without putting on a wedding garment? Look, the tables are now fully occupied with poor people, of whom a part of them were bad and only a small part good, but all of them dressed themselves so nicely that my eyes can find true pleasure in them. You were invited already the first time and you did not want to listen to the invitation, and now on the third general invitation you decided to come in, but without a wedding garment, while you still are wealthy enough to possess a wedding garment. Why then did you put me to shame?’

[11] After these questions, the man became very unwilling to the king. He also did not even want to apologize or ask the king for forgiveness but he kept silent and gave no answer at all, although the king at first addressed him as a friend.

[12] This evil stubbornness irritated the king so much, that he said to his servants: ‘Since this man is so stubborn, and rewards my great kindness and friendliness only with a bad mood, anger and contempt, you must bind his hands and feet (loving will and wisdom) and throw him out (into matter) into extreme darkness (pure worldly reason)! There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth (worldly quarrellings over justice, truth and life).’

[13] However, with this I am telling you that by His awakened helpers God also invited and called many of you to the true Kingdom of God, but only few are chosen, because the first time they did not want to listen to the invitation at all. After that, they resisted against it – just like it is the case now – and when for the third time all the gentiles were invited to the wedding, dressed themselves and came to the wedding, there was only one of those, who was invited first, who came in a dress that was not fit for the wedding feast, and this one is the image of your stubbornness of

spirit which will throw you into the deepest darkness and distress of the world. And therefore, among those who were called since the beginning, only few will be chosen, and so the true Kingdom of God will be taken away from you and be given to the gentiles. But you, you will search in your deepest worldly darkness, and you will quarrel and fight and not find the Kingdom of God anymore which you have lost and which has left you until the end of the world.

[14] The true and living Kingdom of God however, does not come in and does not consist of outward appearance, but it is in the deepest of man, because if man does not have it in himself, it does eternally not exist anywhere else in the whole of infinity.

[15] And the Kingdom of God in man consists of this: that he keeps the commandments of God and that from now on he believes in Him who was sent to you in Me.

[16] In truth, I say to you: he who believes in Me and acts according to My word, has eternal life in him, and together with that he will also have the Kingdom of God. For I Myself am the Truth, the Light, the Way and eternal Life.

[17] The one who will either hear it from My mouth or from the mouth of those whom I am already sending out now as My real and true witnesses – and that I will send out even more in the future – and will not believe that this is so and cannot ever be otherwise, will not enter the Kingdom of God, but will remain in the night of his own worldly judgment. This I have said to you now. Blessed is the one who will take it to heart.”

## 15. ASKING FOR THE TAX COIN



WHEN the high priests, scribes and Pharisees heard this from Me, they did not know what more they could do against Me to catch Me in My words, since with the question about the Kingdom of God they did not succeed because they could not say anything against it and because all the people from the crowd loudly declared that I had spoken and taught the

full truth.

[2] Also **the more moderate ones** who were present said: “We told you before that with questions from the Scriptures you are no match to Him because He may be more familiar in this than we ourselves. You only should ask His advice and opinion about Roman laws, which He, as a so-called prophet, cannot approve because of the laws of Moses. We could more easily catch Him with that. But then the questions should be asked by those who are very qualified.”

[3] **All agreed on this and they secretly deliberated to know how they should handle it to catch Me in My own words in the manner that was advised.**

[4] **Some went outside to the scholars of the Roman law and also to the judicial advisers of Herod, and they promised a great reward if they could catch Me in My words.**

[5] **Soon they came with a pretended friendly look and said (the servants of Herod):** “Master, we know that You are truthful and You make the way of God known in the right manner, without asking if perhaps someone did not agree with Your teaching. For only the truth counts for You and not the respect of a person, so that You always can speak out a free judgment. Look, we are lawyers and found it always very strange that we as Jews, who according to the law of Moses should always be free, still have to pay taxes to the emperor of Rome. What is Your opinion about this matter? Is it right that we Jews have to pay taxes while we have a certificate which says that we, despite the Roman domination may move freely according to the law of Moses. What do You say about this?”

[6] **However, because I noticed very clearly their cunningness at the time they came in, I looked at them very seriously and said aloud:** “Hypocrites, why do you want to tempt Me!? Show Me such a tax coin!”

[7] **At once they showed Me such a coin.**

[8] **Then I said:** “Whose image is on it and whose inscription!?”

[9] **They said:** “As You can see, the one from the emperor.”

[10] **I** said: “Well, then give to the emperor what belongs to the emperor and to God what belongs to God!”

[11] When **they** heard this, they were surprised at My wisdom and said to the priests: “You can test this wise Man yourself, because we are no match for His wisdom.”

[12] Then they went away.

[13] And again I spoke freely with the people about the immortality of the human soul, which attracted a few Sadducees who were there. After a short while I came in contact with them, which follows now.

[14] After these discussions it was of course already around noon. For this reason a few of My disciples asked Me if it would not be better to leave the temple and to look for a midday meal, because I conquered the Pharisees almost completely and all the people was in our favor and they believed in Me.

[15] **I** said: “This can still wait for awhile because man does not live from bread alone, but also from every word that comes out of the mouth of God. I have to work as long as it is day. When the night comes it is not easy to deal with this people and to work. Sure, the Pharisees have left now to deliberate again if perhaps I still cannot be caught in one way or another. Therefore, they soon will come back to make it difficult for Me. And there is a big group of Sadducees who also have something against Me and will soon start a discussion with Me. On this occasion the necessary Pharisees and scribes will not be absent either. Therefore, we will stay in the temple, for also the people will stay here. But if one of you wants to leave to take care of his body he also can do that. But I prefer that you stay here.”

[16] When the disciples heard that from Me they stayed and not one of them left the temple.

## 16. JESUS AND THE SADDUCEES. MARRIAGE IN HEAVEN.



IMMEDIATELY after that, **the Sadducees**, who have a pure cynical opinion and do not believe in a resurrection or in a life of the soul after physical death, came to Me. They asked Me: “Master, Moses said – although he did not command it explicitly: ‘If a man of a woman dies without child, let then his brother marry his wife in order to procreate a descendant’. Now in our case there were 7 brothers. The first married a woman, died however some time later without having procreated a descendant with the woman. So the widow came – according to Moses’ advice – to the second brother. However, the same happened to him as his deceased brother. This continued up to the seventh brother, and finally the woman died without any fruit. If it is true that there is a resurrection after the death of the body, then we ask ourselves, whose wife will she be in the other life, since here all the 7 brothers were her husband?”

[2] I said: “Oh, then you are greatly mistaken and you do not know the Scriptures and even less the power of God. In the resurrection, which you did not understand, men will be completely equal to the angels of God and will not marry or be taken into marriage. For marriage in Heaven is different from yours on this Earth.

[3] In the same way as here on Earth when a righteous man and a righteous woman are united with each other, so in Heaven love and wisdom are united with each other.

[4] But if you are so well versed in the Scriptures, then you surely must also have read that it is written that God spoke clearly as follows: ‘I am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob’. And God is not a God of the dead but a God of the living. Now if God is truly a God of the living and not of the dead, then Abraham, Isaac and Jacob – who according to you are entirely destroyed – must still be living and must have been resurrected already a long time ago to the true eternal life. For if this were not so, then God would have spoken an untruth to Moses when He



said: 'I am the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob', because God can only be a God of those who live and not a God of those who do not live or do not exist anywhere. For to claim and believe such thing would be the greatest foolishness of the world.

[5] However, when Abraham was still walking on Earth in the flesh, and the prophecy came to him that once I Myself would come in the flesh in this world as a Son of man – which is now fulfilling before your eyes – and when it was also promised to him that he would see My day and My time in this world, he fully rejoiced.

[6] And I can truthfully assure you that he also saw My day and My time on this Earth and is still continuously seeing it and is fully rejoicing over it. Would he also be able to do that if he would not have been resurrected a long time ago or if he would be entirely dead and, as you believe, destroyed forever?"

[7] The totally defeated **Sadducees** said: "If you show us the resurrected father Abraham we will believe what You told us here."

[8] I said: "If you do not believe My words, you will also not believe the appearance of Abraham, which is easy to accomplish. You would say: 'Now look what a magician this Man is and how he wants to throw sand in our eyes'. But I say to you: I Myself am the Live and the Resurrection, whoever believes in Me has life and the resurrection already in himself.

[9] Look, here are many who are still walking in the flesh and they are already resurrected in the spirit. Therefore, they will not feel nor taste death and will from now on live eternally. These have already seen and spoken to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and know what they can expect. But you do not know by far what to expect, although you live and also think and will. Did you understand Me?"

[10] When the Sadducees received this lesson from Me they did not say anything anymore and they withdrew.

[11] **The people** however were simply amazed because of My great wisdom and they said to themselves: "This One is truly more

than a simple prophet for He speaks on His own authority. If He would only be a prophet He would not speak like a Lord full of the highest power from God. For the one who says: ‘I Myself am Life and the Resurrection, whoever believes in Me will not see death, feel nor taste it, for he already has life in himself’ – no one can say this about himself, except God. We know however, that a Messiah is promised to all the Jews and whose name will be great, for He will be named Immanuel, that is: ‘God with us’. This Man must surely be the One. Otherwise, from where could He have such power and wisdom?”

**17. THE LORD ASKS THE PHARISEES WHAT THEY THINK ABOUT CHRIST. THE NATURE OF MAN. ABOUT THE TRIUNE BEING OF GOD.**



**S** HIS is how the people spoke among themselves. The Pharisees and scribes who were present again did not hear how the people spoke about Me. But they heard that I had silenced the Sadducees. Secretly they were glad about that because they disliked the Sadducees very much. But now they took courage again to continue to try if perhaps they could catch Me in My words in one way or another.

[2] **A scribe** came to Me and said: “Master, I am convinced that You truly are in all seriousness a rare wise Man and are an expert in the Scriptures. Therefore tell me: what is actually the most important commandment of the whole law?”

[3] **I** said: “The most important and all containing commandment is: ‘You shall love God the Lord with all your heart, with all your soul and with all your mind’. Look, this is the most important and greatest commandment. The other is equal to it: ‘You shall also love your fellowman as yourself’. That means: always do with pleasure for him what you also would like him to do for you if you were in need of it and if it would be within his means. The whole law and all the prophets rest on these 2 commandments. Or do you perhaps know a more important commandment?”

[4] **The scribe** said: “A more important commandment is not known to me. Therefore You answered correctly.”

[5] **There was now already a whole crowd of Pharisees and scribes around Me and they deliberated what they should ask further to catch Me, so that they could capture Me.**

[6] **However, I said to them: “Listen, the fact that you are continuously questioning Me, thinking that I will be trapped, is clear to everyone here. I already answered a great deal of questions and showed you that you cannot trap Me. Therefore I want to ask you a question again. If you can answer Me, you may ask Me again a few things.”**

[7] **The Pharisees** said: “Good, just ask, also we will not withhold You any answer.”

[8] **I said: “Well then, tell Me: what do you think about Christ? Whose Son will He be?”**

[9] **The Pharisees** said: “As it is written: He is a Son of David.”

[10] **I said: “Hmm, strange, if this is so, then why does David in the spirit call Him a Lord, when he says: ‘The Lord said to My Lord: sit down at My right hand till I have put Your enemies at Your feet?’ If David calls Him Lord, how can He then be his Son?”**

[11] **On this, a Pharisee** said: ”We know that David spoke in the spirit like this about Christ, but who can understand what he meant with the ‘Lord’, who spoke to his Lord, and who is the Lord whom David called ‘his Lord’? For according to the teaching of Moses we cannot accept that at the time of David they already thought and believed in two Lords of which each one would be completely God. The Lord who spoke to the Lord of David must clearly be another person than the Lord who David calls ‘his Lord’. Otherwise how could David say: ‘The Lord spoke to my Lord’? But who can understand this? If You understand it, then explain it to us. Then we will believe that You speak out of God’s Spirit.”

[12] **I said: “If you as so-called scribes cannot understand the way of speaking of the old Hebrews, how then do you want to understand their spirit?”**

[13] The Lord, thus Jehovah, was certainly also a Lord of David, thus also his Lord. And therefore, David did not express himself wrongly when he said: 'My Lord spoke to my Lord.' And when he spoke like that it is also clear that both Lords, who by way of expression are only apparently two Lords, are in fact one and the same Lord. You yourselves do also say: 'My spirit spoke to the mind of my soul.' Does the spirit of man not live in his soul and is thus one with his soul, although as the actual life's force it is in the soul nobler and more complete than the substantial soul himself?

[14] In God there are also two distinct essential qualities and these form His initial substance and consequently form His undivided one initial Being.

[15] The one distinct essential quality is love, as the eternal flame of life in God, and the other distinct essential quality is as a result of the brightest flame of life, the light of the wisdom in God.

[16] If this is now so, and undeniable not any different, is then the love in God not totally the same glory in God as His wisdom?

[17] But when David said: 'The Lord spoke to my Lord', he only said that the endless merciful love in God penetrated its wisdom totally and said to it: 'Go and sit at My right hand, become Word and Being, become one with all the power of My Life, and everyone who is an enemy of the Light must then bow before the power of Love-Life in its Light.'

[18] However, what David said at that time in the spirit, stands now in a wonderful way embodied before you. Why do you close your eyes and do not want to realize that the great promise is being fulfilled and is now standing before you and speaking to you, and is showing you the ways of the true life out and in God?"

[19] When the Pharisees heard this from My mouth, a kind of fear for My wisdom came upon them, so that no one of them dared to ask Me anything further to try Me.

[20] And **the more moderate temple servants** said secretly to the **furious Pharisees**: "We already told you before with good intentions that nothing can be achieved with this Man. For firstly there is such an inconceivable wonderful power in His will that He

can move and destroy mountains with it, secondly all the people and all the Romans are on His side, and thirdly He is so inconceivably wise that with all our wisdom and all our questions, no matter how smart, we can in no way trap Him to make Him suspicious in front of the people and the more questions we ask Him the more we make ourselves suspicious in front of the people who are starting to laugh at us. What benefit is it to us? It would have been better to never interfere with Him. But now the harm has almost been done to us. What shall we do now? We are of the opinion that it would be most wise to turn our back to this whole matter and not to involve ourselves openly any longer.

[21] If ever this should possibly be a decree from God, we are resisting in vain. And if this is not the case, then it will pass away by itself, so that after some time no one will remember anything about it, as it happened already many times. This is our opinion about this, but you can still do what you think is best, although you must be convinced that we were right.”

[22] **A chief priest said quietly, so that the people could not hear it:** “Yes, yes, you surely are right, but must we tolerate that He humiliates us so much in front of the people, our good milk cow?”

[23] **A moderate man said:** “All this is correct, but then think about a way to turn our lost case around, then we gladly will support you with everything. But we are only of the opinion that a suitable way will not easily be found, and a bad method will only make this matter more serious and make our situation worse.”

[24] **A chief priest said:** “What would you think if we ask Him if He Himself would represent us before the people as what we in fact are according to Moses?”

[25] **A moderate man said:** “This could be better than all the traps we thought to set for Him. Let someone try that, but sincerely and in all seriousness. Maybe it is useful. As far as we can see He is in fact not a bad and revengeful person, because we heard from everywhere that He helps poor people a lot, or else He certainly would not be in such high esteem among the poor people.”

[26] **Then they deliberated who would be the one to take the task**

upon him to talk to Me about this matter. One of the more moderate ones was quickly willing to do it, and one after the other agreed on it. He came to Me and wanted to present his request.

[27] But I did not give him the chance to speak and said immediately in his face: “I know all too well what you want to tell Me now. Therefore, you can save the trouble to lose even one word before Me about your request. But I also know what I have to say about you to the people and also to My disciples for and against you. Thus you can either go or stay here to hear what I will say.”

[28] When the Pharisee heard this of Me, he turned around and went back to his colleagues. All of them were all ears to listen to all the things I would say to the people for and against them.

## 18. THE LORD TALKS ABOUT THE SCRIBES



IMMEDIATELY opened My mouth and said: “The Pharisees and scribes are sitting on Moses’ chair. Abide by everything they say what you have to do because Moses and the prophets have said so, and do it also. But you should not conform to their works and should not do as they are doing.

[2] What they tell you to do is mostly correct and true, but they themselves are not doing what they teach you. They force you to carry heavy and often unbearable burdens and they put these on the shoulders of the people, but they themselves do not want to touch it with one finger.

[3] All works that appear to be good, they only do to be seen by the people as the servants of God. Therefore they enlarge their memoranda (these were the notes of those who paid dearly for great and long prayers and offerings for their well being), and they make the hems on their robes bigger (the big hems on their robes indicated severe and unceasing offerings and prayer service, which however only consisted of wearing bigger hems).

[4] During the meals they like to sit at the head of the table – also in the schools – and they attach great importance to be greeted on

the market place (a big place where many people were gathering), and to be called 'rabbi' by the people.

[5] But you, even if you would be or want to become My disciples, should not allow to be called like that. Because only One is your true Master and that am I (Christ). You are only equal brothers among each other.

[6] From now on you should not call anyone on Earth in the full sense of the truth 'father', for only One is your true Father, namely the eternal One in Heaven.

[7] And again I say to you that at no time you should allow that they call you 'master' in My teaching and to be greeted as such, because now you know who your Master is.

[8] Also there should not be any difference in rank among you as it exists now in the temple and the world of the people, but let the greatest and highest among you be the servant and helper of the other brothers, for he who exalts himself will be humbled down. However, he who out of love for his brothers humbles himself down will be exalted."

[9] When the Pharisees heard this teaching of Me and looked at Me in anger, **the whole crowd** cried out to Me: "O Master, You alone are truthful. This is how it should be among all men, then this Earth would already be a true Heaven. But as it goes now among the people, when everyone often for a small thing wants to be more and higher than his fellowman, this Earth is a true Hell, because in the imagined delusion of greatness one person persecutes the other and oppresses the weak with his unsatisfied pride. O poor and weak humanity of this Earth, for many it would be better if they were never born.

[10] O Master, we can see that Your word is a true word of God, but those who hear it, are with their skin and hair in Hell. Therefore, Your divine word will also not help their salvation, because the ones for whom it is most concerned are the ones who do not care at all, for already now they show their teeth out of anger, and they watch like hungry wolves and hyenas, anxiously waiting for a lamb on the pasture."

## 19. THE LORD CRITICIZES THE PHARISEES



UCH statements from the people were like a stench in the nose of the Pharisees. For this reason, a few orators stood up to speak some soothing words to the excited people by which they did not neglect to make Me and My teaching suspicious and to put in the shade. They accused Me of great improper arrogance and said that I had abolished the law of Moses when I wanted that from now on a child could no longer honor its parents by greeting them with the word father or mother since Moses explicitly gave the commandment that one should honor his father and mother.

[2] By that, the people became uncertain and expressed their doubts among each other and some among them said: "Well, in fact you cannot disagree with the Pharisees and scribes. It seems that in His enthusiasm He went too far."

[3] Then **the more moderate Pharisee** came to Me and said: "Do You hear now what the people are saying? You made us very suspicious in front of the people, so that they raised their voice against us. But they noticed that You went too far by going against Moses. That is why it was the highest time to make the people change their mind. Now they see their mistake, and my question is: what do You want to do now?"

[4] **I** said: "I surely do not have to ask you what I further have to do or to say. When John taught the people and exhorted them to do penance, you also behaved like this in order to uphold your worldly justice, but you did no penance and you also withheld the people from it by your hypocritical words, as you just did again. But by this you also will bring even more damnation upon yourselves. The One who has the power to save you or to bring you to ruin is saying this to you, depending on what you want to achieve with your actions.

[5] You fools of heart and mind. When you yourselves call God your Father and you say that one should not blaspheme the name of God, how can you then put God equal to man? What is the



difference when you call God your Father but also the one who procreated you in the womb of a woman?

[6] You want to be scribes and you do not even know the difference anymore between the original Hebrew words 'jeoua' and 'jeoutza'. The first mentioned means 'Father' and the second 'procreator'. And when this is so and not otherwise, then who else but you brings the people into the greatest confusion?

[7] Therefore, woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, foolish hypocrites! By your great laziness, stupidity and wickedness you always lock up the true Kingdom of Heaven for those who want to come in. Truly, you also will not come in and no one else who will behave like you now!

[8] You yourselves will not come into God's Kingdom of truth and life, and those who in some way still want to come in, you do not allow them to enter but you persecute and curse them, and in this way you block all ways to the light and eternal life for them. Therefore also, even more damnation will be your share!

[9] Still for another reason I say: woe, you scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You devour the possessions of the widows and orphans and pretend that you will pronounce long and strong prayers for it. Also for this, even more damnation will rest upon you!

[10] Still more reasons to say woe, you scribes and Pharisees, terrible hypocrites! You travel over land and sea to change somewhere a gentile into a Jew. When he became one, you soon make of him a child of Hell, twice as worse as you yourselves. Also for this you will reap your reward in Hell!

[11] Again woe, you blind leaders who say: when one swears by the temple, it means nothing, but the one who takes a false oath by the gold of the temple, is guilty and punishable. O fools and blind ones! Which is greater and more: the temple by which the gold is sanctified or the useless gold itself?

[12] Also, this is how you speak and teach: if someone swears by the altar, it is not important, but if someone takes falsely an oath by the offering that is lying on the altar, he is guilty and punishable. O fools and blind ones! Which is greater here, the

offering or the altar that sanctifies the offering!?

[13] Is it then not true and right that everyone who swears by the altar, also swears by everything that is lying on the altar? And he who swears by the temple, also swears by everything that is in the temple. And finally, the one who swears by Heaven swears certainly also by God's throne and consequently also by the One who sits upon it – or more precisely: who rests and rules!

[14] Again woe, you scribes and Pharisees, great hypocrites, who impose according to the old law the tithes of mint, the dill and cumin, because this is to your advantage, but you do not care about the most difficult and the most important, namely a just and true jurisdiction, faith and mercy, in order that everyone would receive complete justice before you. With this I do not say that one should not do the first mentioned, but what I say is that one should not – like you are doing now – refrain from doing the second and which is much more important!

[15] O total blind leaders, you are sifting out mosquitoes but you swallow camels! Woe, you scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites in every respect, who keep the outside of the sacred cups and plates clean, but you do not care a bit when these vessels are full of robbery and excessive gluttony from the inside. O, you blind Pharisee, clean first the inside of the cup and the plate, so that subsequently also the outside will truthfully become clean!

[16] And much more woe over you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites, all of you! You are like whitewashed graves. These are also shining clean on the outside, but inside they are full of dead man's bones and repulsive dirt. Such graves are precisely showing who you are. You also make a pious impression outwardly on the people, but from the inside you are full of hypocrisy and all kinds of vices!

[17] And manifold woe to you scribes and Pharisees, complete hypocrites! You are building now tombstones for the old prophets and decorate the graves of those righteous ones and you lament as follows: 'Oh, if we would have been in the world at the time of our fathers we would not be guilty of their innocent blood that was

shed.’ But by this you give evidence that you are true children of those who killed the prophets. Well then, make with Me also the evil measure of your fathers full, just like you already made the measure full with Zachariah and with John. Serpents, brood of vipers, how will you escape the damnation of Hell when you behave like this!?”

## 20. THE LORD CALMS DOWN THE PEOPLE



**A**FTER My relentless speech, the people shouted for joy again: “If this Man were in reality not Christ and did not possess the fullest divine power, He never would have had the courage to throw these great truths in the face of these tyrants! Anyone else they would grab and tear up in anger, but for Him they stand as guilty big criminals before a merciless judge! Yes, yes, so it is! He did nothing else but throwing the full plain truth before their feet, and as their Lord He also showed them the well-deserved reward. So this temple rabble deserves nothing better than to be mercilessly grabbed, be driven to the Jordan and to be drowned as the worst scapegoats of the whole big country of the Jews!”

[2] **I** said to the people: “Do not judge, as if it were given to you to judge and to punish, but be patient with the sinners. Because it is written, according to the word out of the mouth of God: ‘Wrath and vengeance are Mine.’ You people should remember that God the Lord is the only true Judge, who knows at the right time to reward what is good and to punish evil. It is up to you to be patient with the sinners, for when someone is physically very ill, it would be very strange to punish him immediately, for usually it is his own fault that he became so miserable and sick. When an experienced doctor comes by and says to the sick person that there is still a good chance to help him if he will let himself be treated by a good doctor and will do what he says and the sick person discards the advice of the doctor, it is of course his own fault when he goes to ruin in a miserable way because he holds on to his

inflexibility.

[3] And look, it is precisely the same with these blind scribes and Pharisees. As a true doctor I showed them the two great shortcomings of their soul and I thereby also prescribed the medicines, but if they discard them and do not want to apply it, judgment will not come by Me but it will come by the result of their stubbornness by which they will be thrown into misery and ruin.

[4] Therefore, God gave commandments to man for the salvation of his soul. If he will keep them, he will be eternally happy, but if he does not want to keep them at all, he will be the one who will punish himself. Because once God established a permanent and unchangeable order without which the existence of any creature would be unimaginable. He faithfully revealed this order to the free man through many revelations, and according to his complete free will man should conform himself to it and allow himself to be guided and be developed by it. If man will do so he will come to perfection according to the will of God, and will become a being, equal to God, equipped with all divine love, wisdom, power and might. And by that he will inherit the true sonship of God. This he impossibly can achieve in any other way except through the ways that were very faithfully proclaimed to him at all times for the benefit of this supreme goal.

[5] Now what is important for man are an entirely true faith and then his completely free will. If he believes and acts accordingly, then he becomes the happiest being in God's entire infinity, but if he does not believe and will not act accordingly, then he can only blame himself when his soul becomes more and more miserable and blind, and when he will have less and less life in him.

[6] And that is why I came Myself as a human being to show you the right ways, because you never completely believed the messengers that I sent, and therefore you also did not act according to their words.

[7] But now, if you also do not believe Me and do not want to live according to My teaching, then I am asking you, who will have to

come after Me, so that you will believe him and act according to his teaching? If you do not believe Me, the Master of all that lives, who then do you want to believe after Me, act accordingly and be blessed?

[8] The fact that one does not believe Me and also does not want to life according to My teaching, of that, the servants of the temple are certainly giving you the best of proofs.”

## 21. THE FREE WILL OF MAN. MAN’S IMPATIENCE AND GOD’S TOLERANCE.



**SOMEONE from the crowd**, who also knew the Scriptures very well, said: “Lord and Master, among us there are many who heard Your teaching and saw Your many signs and admired them, so that they said: ‘If this Man with all His unknown wisdom and clear visible power and might which is completely equal to God’s, for which even the stubborn death must bow, is still not the promised Messiah, then we ask ourselves if the true Messiah – if he would come – would be able to perform greater signs. We do not believe that and we also will not believe that. Because a Man, who without any help but only by His word heals the worst sicknesses, even replaces totally lost limbs – as we saw near Bethlehem – brings death people back to life, who rules over the winds and storms and who makes His will known to the sun, the moon and all the stars, is a God and not a human being.’ [2] You see, Lord and Master, this is how we speak regularly among ourselves, and therefore we also believe that You are not only one of the greatest of all prophets, but are truly the Lord Himself.

[3] Although You have a body, just like we, but in Your body is hidden the fullness of the deity, and Your words and deeds are witnesses of its wonderful existence in You. This we firmly believe and we will no more let ourselves be deceived by those terrible tyrants of the temple.

[4] We have to make You a request, o Lord. Shorten Your holy

patience and lay Your incorrigible enemies completely and totally under Your footstool and chastise them with the rod which they already deserved for a long time.”

[5] I said: “If you truly believe in Me, you also must not try to anticipate My wisdom which guides and settles all things in the world, but you must unite your patience with Mine and think: in this world, where the freedom of life is being tested, order has been set once and for all times that every man may do what he wants. For only by the complete freedom of will he can fight for the eternal life of his soul. And as he has a free will, he also has a right ability to think and a free intellect with which he can distinguish and determine what is good and true and he can also act accordingly, for the powers were richly given to him.

[6] When man distinguishes what is good and true, but still voluntarily acts contrary to it, he is building his own judgment and his own Hell and is therefore already here on Earth a complete devil. And look, that is the punishment which man is giving to himself, without My willing it.

[7] Therefore, do not busy yourself with My great patience and love for men, whether they be good or bad. I only warn them when they are on the wrong path. But despite My omnipotence I cannot grab them and bring them back on the right path of life, for that would mean that I would take away their free will, which would mean the same as if I would take away the life of the soul and that of the spirit within.

[8] Therefore, everyone has to walk as it pleases him. It is for man more than enough to know the ways and the fixed consequences that he can expect, whether they are good or bad. Because every man who uses his reason and his intellect knows the things which are right and good according to the revelations from the Heavens, and also what is wrong and bad. The choice to act accordingly is completely up to his free will.

[9] If you understand this well, you cannot complain about My patience and tolerance, because on this Earth, which is a house of education for the future true children of God, it must be so and can

impossibly be otherwise.

[10] Where people are called to become complete spirits and beings equal to God, also the opposite direction must be possible for their freedom of will to have free allowance to become a complete devil. However, by his own fault he will have to bear in a miserable way that which he caused by his own will.

[11] Therefore, I will judge and punish no one by My omnipotence for his bad deeds, but the individual will do that himself and also the unchangeable law of My eternal order which was made known to everyone by way of the light of the many revelations already since the first beginning of the existence of man on this Earth.

[12] If you understood this now, then train yourself also in patience, and have also true compassion in you, not only with the sick bodies, but even more with the sick and blind souls of the people. Then you will be on the easiest and fastest way to attain to the true and complete equality with God and become like the angels in Heaven.”

## 22. THE FUTURE OF JERUSALEM



**NE of the moderate Pharisees** said again: “Master, I and more people among us, can surely see that You are a mighty Teacher and You are speaking freely and openly, irrespective of persons. And it is also entirely true that the prophets revealed the true way to life to every man. Well, these revelations should be more than sufficient for man. Why then is it allowed that there are still kings and rulers of the world with their own bad worldly laws, and by that, they inflict the greatest harm to weak mankind? According to me, this would really not be necessary since it was completely explained in the revelations how man has to live and act according to the will and the unchangeable order of God. Then for what reason are all those imperious and greedy monarchs, kings and now even emperors allowed?”

[2] **I** said: “In the beginning God did not ordain or prescribe this, for He gave to man true and righteous leaders and judges who

were enlightened in the spirit. But in the course of time, when the people were doing well and when they were rich in everything that was good and valuable on Earth, they were no more satisfied with the simple and modest leaders and judges. They began to grumble, and at the time of the faithful Samuel they wanted a king who also had to radiate such magnificence like the kings of the other pagan nations who committed idolatry with their kings.

[3] When Samuel related to God what the people required from him at any cost, God spoke in His wrath to Samuel: ‘This people committed to Me already more sins of the worst kind than there is grass on the whole Earth and sand in the sea. And now they want to add to their many sins the greatest of all, being no more satisfied with My reign, they want to have a king like the ungodly pagans. Yes, to this ungrateful people will be given a king as a sharp rod and scourge, under which they will howl and mourn.’

[4] Look, this and still more was said by God to the people as a warning in order to dissuade them from this foolish wish.

[5] But when all this did not help and the people stubbornly persisted in their demand, God gave instruction to His helper Samuel to anoint Saul as king of the Jews.

[6] Look, everywhere where the nations were not satisfied with the meek reign of God there had been a king, and they absolutely wanted to have a man among them as their king.

[7] Was this here also not because of the evil will of the people whom Satan often threw into unbearable misery? God warned the people often and long enough in the most diverse regions of the world not to choose a man as king and provide him with all earthly power. He showed them all the bad results that would come from it, but the people closed their heart and their ears for the voice of God and they themselves caused their misery. And what they caused themselves, they also will have to take upon themselves.

[8] Yes, if an entire nation would unanimously beg God to lead them, and rule and reign over them again, just like it was the case in the beginning, truly, then God would not leave the serious pleading of a nation unanswered. But since those same kings have



always too many favorites on their side, and do not grant any freedom to the people who want it differently, and as they form and educate them mostly already from the cradle in favor of the king, the people feel the pressure of the king, but they do not know where to ask for help, for the rulers realized since the beginning of their sovereignty that an enlightened people would soon separate themselves from them again.

[9] Therefore, they tried with the help of false prophets – of who you are a sad remnant – to mislead the people and to make them blind for the one and true God. And because of that, they cannot find anymore the right way to God on their own without the help of the men who were called by God for this reason. And they continue to live in their usual common idolatry, trying by all means – no matter how bad they are – to get only earthly advantages. If then a true prophet, called by God, will come, he is not only not recognized as such, but he is moreover persecuted as a blasphemer and often killed, as this was many times the case with you.

[10] And when this is so, how can God help such a people that fell so deep, when despite their great misery they stubbornly refuse all help that God offers them? And if such is the case with you, it has no sense to ask the question why God allowed besides the revelations worldly governors who harm the people with their worldly laws.

[11] Do the people, or you, want something else? If this would be so, you would faithfully listen to Me and act according to My teaching. For I, the Lord Himself, came to you because I want to save you. But what do you do? You only deliberate to see how you can catch and kill Me. And if you and many thousands with you will do that, then ask yourselves, who apart from Me, can still save and help you?”

[12] **The Pharisee said:** “Master, You are always accusing us as if we defiled our hands with the blood of the prophets. Yet, we are not responsible for what our fathers have done in their blindness. If we had lived with our present knowledge and insight at the time of

the prophets, then we certainly would not have stoned them. Also at the time of Samuel we did not call for a king. But if we as punishment must have a king, we prefer him to be a Jew than a gentile. In fact, I only want to hear from You why do we now as Jews have to be dominated by pagan laws?"

[13] **I** said: "The reason for this is that you already for a long time rejected the laws of Moses and the prophets, and instead of that you introduced your own evil and absurd prescriptions. You preferred those worldly prescriptions instead of God's wise commandments, and for this reason God allowed everything to happen to you what you always wanted and still want. Because if you would prefer God's commandments and the teaching of the prophets instead of the laws of the world, then you would listen to Me, would convert yourselves and act according to My teaching. I preach nothing else than the old Word of God from which you deviated so much that you are no more capable to recognize that this is the word which is coming from My mouth. However, you hate and persecute Me as if I were a sinner and a criminal, and thus you will stay under the power of the rod and the sword of the gentiles.

[14] However, it is also written: 'Behold, I will send prophets, wise men and true scribes. Some of them you will kill and even crucify like the gentiles are doing, and again others you will scourge in your synagogues and persecute from one city to another, so that the blood of all the righteous ones will come over you, from the pious Abel who was struck down by Cain, up to the blood of Zachariah who was a son of the pious Berechiah and whom you killed between the veil of the temple and the altar of offerings. Truly, I say to you: because you acted this way and still are acting this way, all this has come over you, and still worse things will come over you, because you yourselves want it this way and are also bringing it about.

[15] O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, that kills the prophets and stones those who are send to you. How often did I want to gather your children as a hen keeps her chicks under her wings. And you,

children, did not want to be brought under the protection of My wings. Therefore, this house of yours will become lonely and deserted, so that even no screech owls and crows will live within its walls!

[16] Remember this, so that when it soon will come over you and your children, you will remember, that I told you beforehand and how it was also shown to you in an image during the night by a phenomenon in the sky.”

[17] Now the Pharisee asked Me from where I had that knowledge to predict such evil things over the city. And when I would come back if I would leave Jerusalem, because he would speak good words about Me before the high priest.

[18] I said: “With all those who are with Me I will soon leave the temple and you will not see Me coming earlier than when you will shout: ‘Hail to Him who comes in the name of the Lord.’”

[19] Upon this, **the Pharisee** returned to the others and said: “Friends, fighting with Him is useless. This I noticed already since the beginning. Now, already for 5 hours we have been working on Him and accomplished nothing, except that, because of our obstinacy, we have the people against us. The question is now: who will be able to bring them on our side again?”

[20] Nobody reacted on this remark of the Pharisee and all of them left the temple.

[21] I warned the people once more and comforted them. After that, also I left the temple with all those who were with Me. We went again to the Mount of Olives where a delicious meal was already waiting for us.

## 23. THE LORD ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES WITH THOSE THAT BELONG TO HIM



**WHEN** we went back to the Mount of Olives, Nicodemus, Joseph of Arimathea and the old rabbi were following us, and **Nicodemus** said directly to Me: “O Lord, my love of all love, today You have said the plain truth to those tyrants. Yes, it was really a wonder of wonders that today they did not grab stones like last time. At each of Your holy and complete true words I have really felt such a great pleasure as does not happen often. For me, the most wonderful was first that almost all the people who were present in the temple accepted Your teaching of life, and secondly, the Pharisees and scribes with each catch question that they were asking You, they were the ones who caught themselves and were losing the last spark of belief and trust that they still had with the people.

[2] Oh, that was good for those arrogant and imperious, hypocritical pretenders and selfish fanatics who were already considering themselves to be in a higher position than God and Moses himself. How they also tried to convince the people that God is only dealing with the people through them and is only hearing and exalting their prayers. But today in front of the people it has been clearly unveiled how God is looking upon them, and this was so marvelous. This can no more be exceeded by anything else. Now they surely will hold one meeting after another, of which one will be more wicked and stupid than the other.

[3] The best of all this is that they have different opinions among themselves. The least wicked ones are at least realizing that they can do nothing against You, but those real hardened fanatics of the temple are also not realizing that, although exactly today they should have felt that they are completely powerless. In short, I am so happy about Your total victory over those terrible dark people that I would like to shout now: ‘Hail to Him who has come in You to us in the name of the Lord!’

[4] **I said:** “Yes indeed, your feeling is right and you have spoken

correctly, but I preferred that also the Pharisees and all the scribes could have seen the truth and had changed their mind. But now they are as hardened as they were before.

[5] By their spies they have discovered that I have walked upon this mountain with My disciples and all the other friends, and only 2 hours will pass by before we will see here new helpers and persecutors. But My time, about which I have already spoken to you, has not come yet. That is why I will seriously chastise them by My Raphael, but first by the 7 still present Upper-Egyptians. Then they will leave us alone again for a certain time. But now we will go at table to strengthen our limbs. Those who are down there can do whatever they want.”

[6] Raphael came here with the crowd that was entrusted to him and told Agricola that according to My will he taught the young people to speak the Roman and Greek languages and also the language of the Jews, and that they would be very useful in Rome, because they not only could not speak these languages very well but they also could not write or read them.

[7] Agricola was extremely happy about this because now a great burden and much work was taken away from him. Now the young people greeted Me in the Jewish language and then, upon My instruction they went to their tents where also for them the tables were well provided.

[8] After that, we went immediately to our dining-hall, sat on the same seats as before and served ourselves with the well-prepared food and the extremely good wine.

## THE YEARS OF ADOLESCENCE OF THE LORD

### 24. JOSEPH REFUSES TO HELP A GREEK



AFTER about 1 hour the tongues were coming loose and soon it became very lively in the hall.

[2] I related to the guests a few events that took place during My youth, which was greatly enjoyed by all those who were present. The converted Pharisees and scribes who were present, confirmed everything. One of them even related briefly the event when I as a twelve-year-old greatly amazed all the high priests, elders, scribes and Pharisees in the temple with My wisdom. And he added the remark that at that time for a few years already they certainly were of the opinion in the temple that I might be the promised Messiah. But after that, they did not hear anything from Me and they thought that I might have died as a too early awakened boy, or that the Essenes had come to know Me and had taken Me up into their schools, of course with the permission of My earthly parents. And so this matter was slowly slumbering, and only now during the last time has woken up again.

[3] When the Pharisees had finished this story, also John, James and also the other disciples related a few things from My youth. James told the story about the wonderful manner in which Mary became pregnant, about My birth and escape to Egypt, when I stayed there for 3 years, and also many things that happened there, of which all were greatly amazed. Many were envying James of being so fortunate to be with Me all the time.

[4] Then Lazarus said: “Lord and Master, although it rejoices me now indescribably that I, with all my heart I may call myself a friend of Yours, but I still would be more happy if I would have been like James, who simply saw You coming from the opened Heavens to this Earth and who was at Your side all the time. If only I had been James.”

[5] I said: “Indeed, James is entirely a happy man, and is also often

envied by the angels of Heaven, but only in the most noble sense. But for that, he has no advantage over another person. His worth lies merely in the fact that he hears My word, believes it, and out of love for Me, he is acting accordingly. And whoever is doing that, has completely the same privilege as My dear brother James.

[6] But listen now to a rare event from the time after My 12<sup>th</sup> year, when they had heard nothing exceptional of Me.

[7] As a carpenter I always have helped My foster-father Joseph very zealously in his work, and wherever I co-operated, the work was always very good and even excellent.

[8] However, at one time, a Greek, who was a gentile came to Joseph in order to have a good deal with him concerning the construction of a totally new house and a big pig stall.

[9] But Joseph was a pure and strict Jew and said to the rich Greek: ‘Look, we have a law which forbids us to have relations with gentiles and to do them favors whatsoever. If you would be a Jew I easily could do business with you, but because you are a dark gentile, I cannot grant your request. And a pig stall I certainly cannot accept at any time, even if you were a Jew.’

[10] Then, being very excited the gentile said to Joseph: ‘Well, you certainly are a strange man. Indeed, I am a Greek, but I myself and my whole family have already for a long time thrown our many gods overboard into the lake, and we do believe now, just like you, in the same God, and have already received many undeniable favors from Him. But the fact that we do not want to accept the circumcision is because we do not want to submit to your insatiable temple, but only to God the Lord, who is now nowhere else being more profaned and dishonored except in your temple, of which we gentiles know the wicked institution better than you Jews who are becoming completely dull by your temple. And if your only true God lets His sun also shine over us gentiles, then why do you despise us?’

[11] Then Joseph said: ‘You are mistaken if you think that we Jews are despising you, however we have a commandment of Moses which forbids us to have relations with gentiles, and also

forbids us to do business with them. If a pure Jew would do that, he will lose his purity for a long time. And look, I am still a Jew who, since childhood strictly has kept this whole law and who will now in his old days not start to sin against it.’

[12] **The Greek said:** ‘Good my friend. I also will not tempt you in it, because me too I am as old as you are and I know you already longer than you can imagine. But if you observe this law concerning us so strictly nowadays, then how come that you were not so particular when you, because of the persecution of your co-religionists were escaping to us gentiles in Egypt with your young wife and your children?’

[13] Look friend, your laws are all good and true, but they also have to be understood in the spirit of the inner truth, and only then they have to be applied in life. The one who only binds himself to the letter of the law is still far away from the way of truth. When you were in Egypt you were working for us gentiles, and despite that, you remained a very pure Jew. Then why would you now become impure?

[14] During that time you had a most wonderful little son who we as gentiles, because of His wonderful qualities, have honored Him almost like a God. What has become of that child? If He has not died in the mean time He must now be a grown up young Man.’

[15] **As Joseph recognized the Greek now, he said somewhat embarrassed:** ‘Yes, listen my friend. Indeed, you have proven a great friendship to me in Ostracine, and it would now be unreasonable for me not to give in to your desire. But because I am a strict Jew I still will talk first to the elder of this town and then act according to his advice.’

[16] **Then the Greek said:** ‘But as far as I know, in Ostracine you always deliberated with your little son when you planned to undertake something. If that son still lives, He surely will be wiser than He was at that time. Do you now no more ask His advice, if ever – as said – He is still living?’



## 25. THE ATTITUDE OF THE LORD AS A YOUNG MAN TOWARDS THE PRIESTS



**WHEN** Joseph pointed his hand to Me. I stood a few steps from him in the workshop and was sawing a panel, and he said: ‘There in the workshop you can see Him at work. It is curious. Since He was a child until His twelfth year, I and His mother – who is now working in the kitchen – were really totally convinced that He would become the Messiah who was promised to us. But after His twelfth year everything that seemed formerly so godly to Him disappeared in such a way that there is now no trace left of it. However, He is very devout, willing and zealous, and everything that we are giving Him to do according to His ability He is doing without grumbling. But as said, of all that which was wonderful to Him, nothing can be noticed anymore. If you want, you can speak to Him yourself and convince yourself of everything what I have told you.’

[2] **Then the Greek came to Me and said:** ‘Listen, young Man, 18 years ago I already knew You and admired at that time Your pure godly qualities that, as well as Your words were the most important reason why I had adopted your faith, although I still did not accept the circumcision. But still, because of your faith I have left Egypt in order to understand better Your teaching that contains a great wisdom. And for this, You were the most important reason. And now I heard from Your father – who I did not see nor have spoken to him for a long time – that You have lost all that which was godly and wonderful to You as a child. How did it happen?’

[3] **I looked straight at the Greek and said:** ‘If you are well initiated in our doctrine, then the wise proverbs of Salomon will also not be unknown to you. And look, according to one of those proverbs everything in this world has its own time. When I was a child, I certainly was then not yet a strong young Man, and because I now am a strong young Man, I am no more a little boy and I am working as well as every other young man with all diligence and zeal because My Father in Heaven wills it that way. I know Him

and know also always what His will is, and I am doing only that what He wills. And look, this is pleasing to My Father in Heaven.

[4] As a little boy I truly performed great signs to make the people known that I have descended from the Heavens to this world as the Lord. But in the course of time the people did not attach much importance to it and they even were offended when I performed a sign before their eyes. Yet, I remained the same who I am and I will again perform signs before the people to make them known that God's Kingdom has come near. However, when I will do that, will be decided by Me at the right time. Blessed is the one who will believe in Me and will not be offended.

[5] You would like My foster-father to build a new house and a big pig stall for you. This he has to do. Because that which is good in My eyes, is also no sin for God. It has never been forbidden for the Jews to do business in a good manner with honest gentiles, but it was and is forbidden for the Jews to – if they have dealings with the gentiles – adopt their idolatry and their bad teaching, morals and habits, and acts. But if a gentile has accepted the faith of the Jews and consequently by his faith is truly circumcised in his heart and his soul to the one true God, then they may have dealings with him.'

[6] Then Joseph said: "Well, well, this is a lot. You have spoken so much and so wise at one time, and I also see that You are totally right. But still, You also must not offend the priests and must deliberate with them before to prevent that they would call You an heretic. If we deliberate before about a work that according to the letter of the law is still not correct and we give a small offering, then a wise priest will always gladly give permission for a work that is not clearly permitted according to the law. I will go immediately to our elder and present this matter to him.'

[7] I said: 'But what will you do if, despite the presented offering, he will not permit to accept this work?'

[8] Joseph said: 'Yes, then it is clear that we cannot accept it.'

[9] I said: 'Listen, if after some time I will begin My great work I will not ask the priests if I may yes or not undertake this great

work, which will be much opposed to their insignificant temple prescriptions. But I will take this big and heavy work on Me, out of My own highest might and power. Because whatever is good in God's eyes, should also be considered as good by men, if they want that which is good or not.'

[10] Then again Joseph said: 'My dear son, if You act that way, You will have few friends in the world.'

[11] I said: 'Truly, the one who will fearfully pursue the friendship of the world, will easily lose by that the friendship of God. But I am giving here the following advice: we will give this Greek friendship and we will ask absolutely nothing to our imperious and greedy priests, and we will do what has to be done, because this man has proven great friendship to us. Would we now, because of our priests refuse the friendship he is asking from us? No, this we will not do. And if you do not dare, then I alone will build that house and that stall for him.'

[12] Joseph said: 'Well, what do you know? What is suddenly happening to You today? I have not seen You that obstinate and unmanageable in years, and also not seen You talking like that. When prominent Jews and elders are visiting me and gladly would like to talk to You, You are so economical with Your words, and You also were almost never so commanding. And now, a gentile is coming and at once You want to do everything for him whatever he wants. How is this suddenly possible? I almost will believe now that You will perform wonders for this Greek, which You have not done for a long time for any Jew.'

[13] I said: 'Do not be angry, My old and honest upright friend. If I withdraw Myself for the Jews, then I certainly have My wise reasons for it. Is there only one Jew except you, with a true and complete faith? When I, as a young boy performed now and then a sign, they said that I was possessed and had accomplished those things – which no other man was able to do – with the help of the devil.'

[14] When at one time you yourself asked the elder if there possibly could be hidden the spirit of a great prophet in Me, since

at My birth there were such great signs, the blind offended Pharisee said: 'It is written that out of Galilee no prophet will arise. Therefore, already such a question is evil.' And if this is the case with the priests and also with the other Jews, for who would I then perform a sign and why?

[15] But this Greek is full of good faith and a friend of the inner true light of life, who also is not offended when I perform a sign for him. Therefore, it is also very understandable why I behave completely different towards him than regarding those dark Jews.

[16] But I say to you: since the Jews are like that now, the light of life will be taken away from them and be given to the gentiles. It is true that salvation of all the nations comes from the Jews, and this salvation am I, but because the Jews do not want to accept and recognize Me, salvation will be taken away from them and be entrusted to the gentiles.

## 26. THE LORD GIVES A FEW EXAMPLES OF HIS OMNIPOTENCE



**WHEN the Greek said to Joseph:** 'Now I entirely recognize your wonderful son again, and it is a great joy for me that He does not rank us gentiles as the other Jews who consider themselves to be the purest children of God, but as human beings they simply stink of sheer pride and are persecuting one another even worse than dogs and cats. Already as a small child this son of yours has often complained about the Jewry like they are now. But now as a grown-up young Man He has made His thought more clear and showed how things are with the Jews. His opinion is really giving me all the more joy because He has said it precisely as it is living in the deepest of my soul.

[2] After all, it is not good when the first people of God immediately condemn every gentile, who is also a human being. And this even when we have given them the greatest benefits. Why do they not condemn our gold and silver? This for sure is good enough for them. But when one of us has set one foot in their

house, they consider their house and also themselves unclean for the whole day. Oh, what fools. I have no words to express how bad and foolish such faith of delusion is. And look, this confirms now also your godly wonderful son. And this has given me such a big joy as I never felt before.

[3] Now that we have discussed this matter clearly, and know what to think about the worldly prescriptions of the Jews – but on the other hand we also know very well that you, out of those many Jews, are the most honest and sincere person, and you do not feel bound to meaningless forms – perhaps we can now already agree upon how and on which conditions you want to build the house and the big pig stall for me. Your wonderful son will surely take care of the fact that you will not have to expect any criticism from any side. Say now, friend, what do you think about it.’

[4] **Joseph said:** ‘My wonderful son and you are totally right, but if ever there still will be trouble, then only me will be called to account. Concerning the cost, it will take no time to agree on that.’

[5] **I said:** ‘Listen, My earthly foster-father Joseph, it will only depend on My will if someone will betray you with this good work. For even if I did not perform here any signs for the reasons that were explained, I am still the One who I was in the beginning, and all things are possible to Me. Sun, moon, stars and this whole Earth, as well as all Heavens and the whole Hell must obey Me and conform themselves to My will. Would I then be afraid for the dark and blind priests of our synagogue?’

[6] Just conclude a construction contract with this honorable man and leave the rest up to Me. Then we will have no trouble with the construction, because He who is capable to build Heaven and Earth will also certainly easily be capable to build a good house and a pig stall for an honest Greek who is a complete Jew in his heart. I am telling you that a pig stall does not actually belong to the building-works which honors the spirit of man, but the dirtiest pig stall is more dear to Me now than the temple in Jerusalem and many synagogues in the great land of the Jews.’

[7] **Joseph said:** ‘Now listen, my son, You certainly are making

bold statements today. If someone from the city would hear that and would accuse us, then what would happen to us? We would be charged with the most terrible blasphemy and would be stoned without mercy.’

[8] I said: ‘You should worry about other things. Who can hear us if I do not want it, and who will stone us while I am Lord over all the stones? Just look to this stone here, which I now have lifted up. Now I want that before the eyes of the world it will perish completely. And look, it already has happened. If a foolish Jew would throw now stones at us, could they harm us in any way? Now look at the sun. See how it shines with its bright light. And because I am also Lord over the sun, I want now that it will not shine for a few moments. And look, now it is as dark as during the night.’

[9] Now Joseph and also the Greek were frightened, and those who were in the house were afraid and came outside and asked full of fright what this was and what it meant.

[10] I said: ‘I already am with you for such a long time and still you do not know Me. That is My will. But now I want that there will be light again. And look, the sun is shining again as perfect as before. This means nothing else than that all of you will know and realize that I am with you.’

[11] All of them said: ‘The Lord be praised, our Jesus has received His power again from God.’

[12] I said: ‘I have received nothing, because all power and all might are Mine. I and the One who lives in Me are One and not two. And now, Joseph, do tell me if you still feel fear for the Jews and the elders of the synagogue.’

[13] Joseph said: ‘Yes, my dearest son and also my Lord, if this is the case, of course I do not have any fright and no more fear, because only now I entirely have seen my salvation. Now without objection we will start the construction in question and will go even today to the place where our old friend wants his house and his stall to be build.’

[14] The Greek said: ‘I thank you in advance. The reward will

follow abundantly. The place is not so far from here, and before sunset we will easily reach the place where I live with my household, because I have good pack animals standing outside of the inn.’

[15] Then Joseph called My other brothers and told them what had to be done. But Joses was of the opinion that it would be good when one of them would stay home, because also in the small city something could happen every day. At the same time it also would attract less attention, and the supervisors of the synagogue, whose eyes and ears are always directed to this house because of Me, would not so much notice Joseph’s departure and would not inform where and by whom he had accepted work.

[16] Then I said: ‘Also you, must be right one time, but not totally. Because I notice that except James no one has to come with us, and therefore we have to bring the most necessary tools only for 3 men. And this only for the reason that they should know that we are leaving the house as carpenters. James, prepare therefore for the trip.’

[17] James prepared himself and brought the tools.

[18] When the three of us and the Greek were ready to leave, Mary, the mother of My body, came and asked for how long we would stay away.

[19] Joseph said: ‘For such a big job it is not easy to say in advance.’

[20] Then I said: ‘Indeed, men cannot do that, but with Me, also this is possible.’

[21] Mary said: ‘Well, then You tell me how long will you stay away.’

[22] I said: ‘3 full days. That means today, tomorrow and the day after tomorrow. On the Sabbath, before sunrise, we will be back again.’

[23] Then all of them said: ‘How can you three build a big house and a big pig stall in 2 days?’

[24] I said: ‘This is our concern, you will take care that at home your work will be done.’

[25] **Then Mary said to Me:** ‘But my dearest son, I find that again You are so remarkable today. You speak with such a commanding voice. How come?’

[26] **I said:** ‘Because I have to do this for the sake of your salvation. But do not delay us now any longer, because this talk is to no one’s advantage. Time is very precious for man.’

[27] **Mary said:** ‘Yes, yes, You cannot be contradicted in anything. You are always right. Therefore, I wish you a successful trip and a safe return home.’

## 27. ARRIVAL AT THE PROPERTY OF THE GREEK



**N**OW we went immediately on our way to the inn where the pack animals of the Greek were waiting for us.

[2] **From the moment we arrived,** a lot of curious people were disturbing us with questions, and the owner of the inn, a good acquaintance of Joseph, said to him: ‘Friend, I would not travel today because there has been a solar eclipse and such a day was already considered by the elders as an unlucky day.’

[3] **I said:** ‘What kind of wise people you are. You are attaching importance to such senseless fables which do not contain any truth. But to all that is pure and true you consider as dirt and you do not want to hear. Therefore, do not delay us any longer with such senseless things.’

[4] **The innkeeper said:** ‘But dear fellow, the old people were also wise people. Therefore, young people should keep in mind their experiences, otherwise they will have to endure a lot of troubles.’

[5] **I said:** ‘You better keep that which Moses and the prophets have taught. This will be more profitable than when you consider a new moon and lucky and unlucky days. Whoever will keep God’s commandments and will love God above all and his fellowman as himself, does not have to be afraid of unlucky days. However, the one who does not do that, for him every day is an unlucky day.’

[6] **The innkeeper said:** ‘Yes, this I also know, but you still can keep in mind the stories of the old people.’



[7] Then he greeted Joseph once more and wished him a lot of success on his trip and his work. We mounted the pack animals and our trip was progressing well, over mountains and valleys to the west on our way to Tyre.

[8] When we were half way and came to an inn that also belonged to a Greek, our Greek said: ‘Friends, here we will take something that will strengthen us and we will let the pack animals be fed.’

[9] Joseph agreed entirely on this proposition, although he asked immediately if it was possible to receive food that was also allowed for the Jews.

[10] The innkeeper said: ‘Yes, friend, that will be a little difficult. I have sufficient smoked pig’s meat, and also leavened bread, salt and wine, but anything else will not be in store now.’

[11] Joseph said: ‘This does not look so good for us, because we Jews may not eat pig’s meat. And in this time also no leavened bread, because with us the time of the unleavened loaves of bread has begun. But do you not have fish, chickens and eggs?’

[12] The innkeeper said: ‘Look, this inn is located on a high mountain. From where can you obtain fish? And it is also difficult here to keep chickens because firstly they almost do not grow here because of the lack of the necessary food, and secondly, there are too many birds of prey of all kind here, which not only make the maintaining of chickens almost impossible but also hinder the sheep-breeding because the lambs are not safe for one moment with these animals from the sky. Therefore, I only have a few cattle like bulls, oxen and cows and of course also a few calves and also pigs that are growing very well here. But the wine I have to buy in Tyre myself. This is how it is. But whatever there is I want to give you generously and cheap.’

[13] I said: ‘Just give what you have. This we will eat.’

[14] Joseph said: ‘But son, then what will the law of Moses say about it?’

[15] I said: ‘Have you still forgotten who I am? Him who is in Me has given the laws to Moses, and this One says now to you: if there is no other way, eat whatever will be set on the table for you,

because for the one who is pure, everything is pure.

[16] Moses has only forbidden the Jews to eat the flesh of these impure animals to prevent that they themselves would become even more impure than what they were since their birth. But in case of need, also the Jews were allowed to eat the meat of those animals that were indicated as impure. But we ourselves have never been impure and will also never become impure, and so no kind of food when it is well prepared can soil us.'

[17] With this explanation Joseph and also James were satisfied and the innkeeper brought us immediately well smoked and well prepared pig's meat, bread, salt and a good wine, which all of us were eating with a clear conscience. Of course our Greek wanted to pay the bill, and he was really happy that we were entirely satisfied with his meal.

[18] After the meal I said to the owner of the inn: 'A great benefit has come to this inn. From today on, you can keep chickens and sheep as much as you want, because I want that this region will not be disturbed by any beast of prey. Not on the ground or in the sky, as long as you and your descendants will possess this inn. But if ever later on, other and worse innkeepers will possess this inn and this region, they also will be burdened by the old plague.'

[19] The innkeeper said: 'Young friend, how can You convince me that it also will happen just as You have promised so seriously to me, as if You are not in the least doubting about it.'

[20] I said: 'That will happen as sure as the fact that it is sure that you are possessing a treasure in your house, which neither you nor your family members and also not your ancestors have known. Take a spade and dig with it, precisely on the spot where you are standing now, a hole of only 3 hand's breaths deep into the ground that is made of loam, and you will hit a treasure with which you then can do what you want.'

[21] The innkeeper brought immediately a spade and dug with the help of his helpers at once a hole in the ground as deep as indicated, and was greatly amazed to find a few heavy golden plates that together weighed more than 200 pounds. Now of

course, at the same time he asked how and when these valuable things came there.

[22] I said: ‘You are now already the seventh owner of this old inn since the time that these things – which at that time were taken from an eastern caravan – were buried here in this ground out of fear that they would be discovered. You do not have to know more. But those who buried the treasure here were no people of your tribe and you are not a descendant of them, because you are coming from Athens, but those possessors came from Cyprus and they were thieves, but still no murderers for robbery.’

[23] Again, the innkeeper said: ‘But how can You know all this so precisely? Who made it known to You?’

[24] I said: ‘As well as your most secret thoughts are known to Me, in and out of Myself, so is also this known to me, in and out of Myself. And to show you that also your thoughts are precisely known to Me, I will tell you what you have very consciously thought by yourself this morning. You were thinking the following thing: ‘Even though my inn is very busy and profitable, but if I could find a buyer who would buy it for a price with which I could establish a better inn in Tyre, then this is what I would like most of all.’

[25] Look, this is mainly what you have thought. And after that, you were considering to tell this to your wife. But soon you realized that it was still too soon for that because your wife could become impatient and then she would insist by all means to carry out this idea immediately. Tell me, if I know precisely what you think or not.’

[26] Out of amazement the innkeeper was beside himself and said: ‘Really, I have seen, heard and experienced many things, but this I have never experienced before. Yes, now I do believe without any doubt that this region will be completely purified of beasts of prey. Now You have given me extremely and many good things. How will I be able to reward You properly? What do You want me to do for You for this?’

[27] I said: ‘Listen, although you are also a gentile, however you

do not believe in your many gods and therefore you have made yourself familiar with our teaching. That was very good of you. But I tell you: believe firmly in the only true God of the Jews, love Him above all and also your fellowmen as yourself. Do for them that of which you reasonably could want that they also would do that for you, then you will do sufficiently for Me in exchange for everything that I now have done for you. But a material reward I truly do not need.'

[28] Again the innkeeper was surprised about My total disinterestedness and he did not want to accept any payment for what we had consumed.

[29] But our Greek did not want that and paid everything, with the words: 'Divide among the poor what you do not need, then you will please the only true God of the Jews, and in fact of all men.'

[30] The innkeeper promised solemnly to do all this and to convert his household to the faith of the Jews.

[31] Then we stood up, mounted our pack animals again and continued our way. The way that we still had to go was very beautiful and so 1 hour before sunset we reached the place of our destiny.

## 28. TEACHING ON THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN



It was an old village located on a fairly high mountain. From the highest point and on a clear day the big sea was visible. The houses and stalls of our Greek were located a little above that little place. They were very ruinous and of course all of it had to be demolished and instead of it, other constructions had to be built.

[2] When Joseph had taken a good look at it, he said to Me: 'My son, if we have to demolish this in a natural way and then construct it again, then we need much more than a year for this job.'

[3] I said: 'Do not worry about that. What I have said will also happen. But not today and tomorrow, but the day after tomorrow everything will be entirely orderly finished.'

[4] **Now the Greek was asking:** ‘Tonight I would like to be your host but in this respect I also have a few difficulties. Regarding the fish as favorite dish of the Jews it is with us no better than with the innkeeper by whom we had taken our midday meal, because there is no brook of any importance here, no lake, and going to the sea is really a bit too far. But I do have chickens, eggs and lambs and calves, as well as leavened bread, salt and a good wine that I am cultivating myself in my many and big vineyards. It depends now on you what you will choose, then everything will be prepared at the right time.’

[5] **Joseph said:** ‘Then let a lamb be prepared, the rest will certainly be simply fine.’

[6] **The Greek said:** ‘Very well, the best and fattest of my many lambs will be slaughtered and prepared. But now I am still wondering what we will do until it will be fully evening, so that the time would not seem too long for us.’

[7] **I said:** ‘Then let us all go to the top of your mountain and from there look at this environment that is very beautiful. Then a few things could happen there that can give us a lot of topics to think about and come to conversation.’

[8] **When I expressed that wish, everybody agreed. We went on our way and we quickly arrived on the mountain, more precisely on the highest top.**

[9] **From there, we could soon see the big sea completely because it was a clear summer day. And we all were very pleased about this tremendous lovely sight.**

[10] **And Joseph himself said very emotionally:** ‘Oh, if this Earth as a place of education for the children of God is already so beautiful that nothing more beautiful and lovely could be wished for, then how beautiful must be Heaven that is waiting for us after the death of this body and after the resurrection on the youngest day. Between this weary life in the body and that lovely resurrection there certainly must be a very long, lifeless dark night. But this is what I think: if someone has to stay a whole night awake, living in his body, this must seem very long to him. But if

man continues to sleep the whole night long, in the morning it often will seem too short to him. And so I think that the long night will not seem too long for us at the day of the resurrection. Obviously the good God has arranged everything for the best, so that it will be for men's happiness and greatest well being when they are keeping His commandments and have the fullest faith in Him.'

[11] Also our Greek agreed with the opinion of the old Joseph, but he still asked Me what I had to say on that.

[12] And I said: 'Yes, yes, these are really nice and wise sounding words. It was a very good image, but the only thing that is wrong with it, is that it is not as true as it sounds and as it is so nicely and solemnly expressed. But now that I am with you, why are you not asking Me how it will be with the life of the soul after the death of the body? I surely will know it better than you. However I know nothing about an almost centuries-old night of death of the soul after the falling away of the body. The moment that the heavy body will fall off from you, you will be immediately in the resurrection and will continue to live and work eternally, that means, if in the eyes of God you will leave this world as a righteous person.

[13] However, if in the eyes of God you die as an unrighteous person, then surely a very long night between the death of your body and your true resurrection will follow. But it is not as if you will not be aware of it. The soul is indeed aware of it, and that will be a real and long lasting death of the soul. Because a death where the soul has no knowledge of, would not be a real death for him. However, the death of which he will be aware in the kingdom of the impure spirits, will be a great pain and torment for him. Look, this is how it will be. And now that you know that, next time you should think and speak more clearly and more according to the truth. And if you know nothing about it, you should ask Me, so that by your words you should not fall into all kinds of wrong ideas. Remember this well, all of you.'

[14] Then the Greek said: 'Yes, this is how it is and so it also must be, and at no time can it be different. But now that we are enjoying

such a lovely view – and apparently this is only seen by our living and feeling soul through the eyes of the body as if through a pair of windows of his temporary living walking house, which we call body – and the soul himself thinks about it and is fully enjoying this loveliness, the question arises if the soul will also be able to see and evaluate this world and its beauty after the falling away of the body, that means if he would be somewhere on the face of this Earth. What can You, godly young Man, give as clarification?’

[15] I said: ‘The soul of a complete and righteous person will not only be able to see this whole Earth thoroughly and entirely and be able to evaluate about everything very clearly and completely, but about endlessly much more, because this Earth is not alone in the endless space of creation. There are infinitely much more, and which are also much bigger, and there are also as many corresponding ones in the kingdom of the pure spirits.

[16] But man can only have a clear notion of it when he receives understanding from God’s Spirit in the heart of his soul and has proceeded to a wider view.

[17] In short, the complete soul can do everything, but the incomplete soul, who is spiritually blind, will not be able to see anything else than the empty and absurd products of his proud fantasy. But if another soul, also in the other life, without body, will examine himself and possibly will become better, by that he will turn to a clearer view into greater truth, but by a way that lasts longer and is much more difficult than here. And now you also know that which is most necessary. Believe that it is so and not otherwise and keep the commandments, then you will become complete in your soul.’

[18] Then the Greek said: ‘This I am now also believing, without any doubt, and I am convinced that it is so, but we Greeks are still lacking a correct and true picture of the shape and form of a soul. Could you perhaps also still tell us something about that?’

[19] I said: ‘Yes, of course. Whatever is good for you, I always like to do. Look, the soul has the same shape and form as his body, but much more complete. However, I am only talking here about a

complete soul. He has everything what his body had, but of course and obviously for much different purposes. However, his spiritual body is not matter but pure substance.

[20] And the substance is like the light that comes from the sun, which with respect to matter seems to be completely nothing, and still it is the raw material of matter, without being one and the same, because all primitive matter is free and unbound. And so, now you also know this.

[21] And in order that you would be able to have a much clearer idea of it, I am pointing out to you that you remember apparitions of deceased people, who at certain times you have often seen and even spoken to. Did they look different than during their life?'

[22] **The Greek said:** 'Yes, yes, only now I realize completely that in everything You have spoken the full truth. Very often I have had such apparitions, even talked to different deceased ones and was even instructed by them in many things, and I have never seen them differently than in a perfect human shape. Therefore, I thank you for this explanation.'

[23] Also Joseph and James gave the same witness, which the same James who is here as My disciple can confirm now.

[24] While the sun had gone down during My teaching, we all left happy and cheerful the beautiful height and went to the house of the Greek where already a well prepared evening meal was waiting for us, which we also then consumed with a good appetite. After that, we went immediately to rest, of which especially Joseph had great need.

## 29. THE TRIP TO TYRE



IN the morning, already 1 hour before sunrise we went outside, more precisely, again to the already known height from where we could very well see the beautiful surroundings in the morning light, since the sea area behind Tyre could be observed much better in the morning light than in the evening light. Besides, there was also the scenery of plants and



even more of the animal world that in a certain way came to life again. And we were enjoying the free nature for more than 1 hour.

[2] After that, Joseph talked to the Greek about the necessary construction material, and he asked if he possessed the necessary quantity of wood and if it was well dried.

[3] Then the Greek said: ‘Master Joseph, there is certainly something, but if it will be enough, that, your discernment will have to determine. If ever there is lacking something, well, then I have here this beautiful forest of cedars, which certainly can provide us with what we are lacking. After the morning meal you can have a look at the construction material which I have gathered. As far as I can evaluate it, I really think that there will be sufficient construction material.’

[4] Joseph said: ‘That is good, that we will do right after the morning meal and after that we will make a construction plan.’

[5] I said: ‘We can save ourselves this work and trouble for today, because tomorrow we will not need any construction material and still less a construction plan. I thought of going to Tyre today and take a look around that place to see if there is anybody who will need our help.’

[6] Also with this, the Greek agreed and said: ‘But then we must try to go quickly on our way with my pack animals, because it will take well 7 hours from here to reach Tyre.’

[7] We agreed on his proposal and thus we went immediately to have our morning meal, which was already prepared, and a little less than 1 hour later we cheerfully were on our way to Tyre. Our little group continued without delay and so we reached the city after only 5 hours, of which the Greek was very surprised. And he readily admitted that he never covered this way in such a short time, because for a normal caravan it would have taken a full day to travel through this very vast region. Consequently, this trip was for our Greek also a little miracle.

[8] When we arrived in Tyre, we chose our accommodation in a good inn, and the Greek ordered immediately a midday meal according to Jewish tradition, because there was much fish in store

and also the wine did not lack, especially the Greek wine. We relaxed a little because the trip had tired us somehow. During this pause our midday meal was ready and we consumed it immediately. The Greek paid at once everything and then he went with us to a place from where the sea and the many ships could be viewed.

[9] When we had sufficiently watched the sea, the waves and all kinds of ships, Joseph said: ‘Now that we have seen the most typical of this city, and the way to the place from where we came is equally as long as the way to this place, it will be time now to be on our way home again.’

[10] I said: ‘O Joseph, this can still wait. And they soon will need our presence here. Just look over there, how a big ship that is still far away has difficulties to fight against the storm that is growing stronger. Cyrenius is on that ship. We may not let him sink. He was in Asia Minor and is now coming home again, but because of that storm he cannot come to land. He truly has showed us great friendship before and now it is our turn to help him, and this is actually the reason why I wanted to be in Tyre today.’

[11] Joseph said: ‘How can we go completely over those raging waves to help the governor there?’

[12] I said: ‘Did you not see yesterday how My will also reached to the sun? If I was able to command the sun, then I also will be able now to command the sea. I could have done that from afar, but it is now better that we are all here. Later on you will understand more clearly why. But now, most of all, help is needed, and later on we can talk.’

[13] Then I stretched out My hands over the raging waves and said aloud: ‘Calm down, raging monster! I want it, and so be it!’

[14] When I had said those words, the sea was suddenly completely calm, and the ship of Cyrenius was quickly pulled by an invisible power to the safe shore, and in this way he was saved from a sure sinking, together with all the others.

[15] On the place where I had accomplished that, many other people were present, who were very surprised and were wondering

what kind of Man I was, since the elements were obeying Me. Some of them thought that I must be a famous magician, others thought that I was a pious Man and was therefore under the grace of the gods who answered My requests. Again others noticed that I was a Jew, and Jews often had powerful prophets, and that maybe I was a seer of the Jews or maybe even of the Essenes. Consequently they had lively conversations, but still nobody dared to approach Me and ask Me who I was.

[16] The ship came to the shore and everybody was hurrying to it in order to greet the governor. But we stayed where we were.

### 30. MEETING CYRENIUS AGAIN



WHEN Cyrenius came to the shore, he said to the highly ranked persons who were congratulating him: ‘I thank you for your sincere sympathy with the accident that I certainly would have experienced, but it is extremely amazing how the terrible raging storm calmed down so suddenly. This made me completely think of a similar incident in Ostracine in Egypt. During that time there was a wonderful Child of a Jewish family who escaped to that place. He also was able to calm down the storm so suddenly while reversed He also could call up a storm. That must be about 20 years ago. I tried everything to find out where that family is staying, but until now all this was useless. I also have not thought about that family now for a long time, but the sudden stopping of this storm has brought this similar phenomenon – which I, as I just said, had experienced before – again into my memory.

[2] It is really highly remarkable. When such a storm begins to rage here, it takes several days before the great sea will calm down, so that no one dares to go out with a ship on sea, and look now how calm the whole sea has become, without any beat of a wave. What was also surprisingly strange to me is how my ship was quickly coming near to the shore as if it was pulled by a secret power. I tell you: this did not happen in a natural way.’

[3] **A highly ranked person said to Cyrenius:** ‘Just look at that spot that is protruding freely into the sea. There you still can see those 4 people. A Man of about 20 years old stretched out His arms to calm down the sea, and the storm kept quiet. We do not know who He is, but in the first place we think that He is a prophet of the Jews, because He is a Jew according to His clothes. If He really calmed down the storm by His word of power we dare not say for sure, but it remains remarkable that the storm was lying down precisely at the moment when He loudly spoke out His command. It would be worthwhile to search out what and who this Man is.’

[4] **Cyrenius said:** ‘Wait a minute, it is dawning on me now. It is quite possible that this Man would now be precisely that wonderful son of that family of whom I was talking about just now. I have to speak with Him myself.’

[5] **Then Cyrenius was hurrying to the place where the four of us were still standing and from where we were watching the calm sea with its manifold phenomena, as well as the most different kinds of sea fish and all other animals that, compelled by My will, had to show themselves.**

[6] **When Cyrenius came to us, he asked Joseph, whom he still remembered very well:** ‘Friend, are you not the same Jew who about 20 years ago, because of the persecution of the old Herod, had to escape with my help to Egypt, more precisely to Ostracine? And if it is you, then tell me also what has become of that little wonderful boy whom I considered to be a God.’

[7] **Joseph bowed down deeply and said:** ‘Honorable one, it is a too great honor for us, poor carpenters from Nazareth, to come to us yourself, while you only could command that we should come to you. But now that you are already here, I say to you with my heart full of gratitude for all the goodness that – indeed about 20 years ago – you have given to me and my family already here and later on also in Egypt, that I am really the same carpenter Joseph, and also that this grown-up Man is exactly that carpenter whom then as a wonderful Boy, you had come to know.’

[8] **When Cyrenius heard that, his face was really shining from joy.**

[9] He hugged Joseph and kissed him many times and turned then to Me and said: ‘O Lord, am I, great sinner, really worthy in Your eyes to kiss You also?’

[10] I said: ‘Hail to you and to all gentiles, that you in your sins are recognizing Me much sooner than the Jews in their light. Therefore, the light of life will be taken away from the Jews and be given to you gentiles. Just come and kiss Me. Because whoever comes to Me with a love like yours – even if there were clinging as many sins to his soul as there is grass on the whole Earth and sand in the great sea – I will not reject him but take him up like a father would take up his son, who was indeed lost but who has been found again.’

[11] When Cyrenius heard such words out of My mouth he was moved to tears and came to Me, hugged Me and kissed Me without ceasing. Only after that, he thanked Me for the wonderful salvation from the great danger of life. At the same time he invited us to go to his residence where he wanted to be our host and where we had to tell him everything what had happened to us during all that time.

[12] I said however: ‘Dear Cyrenius, tonight we surely will respond to your wish, but tomorrow early we have to be at the place of this Greek who lives more than 7 hours away from here, because there we have to build a new house and a new pigs stall.’

[13] Cyrenius said: ‘Good, my godly Friend. I myself will escort you to that place, and because I do not have to work now for some time, I will stay a few days with you. Because, now that I fully have found you back, I do not want to lose you so easily out of my sight.’

[14] I said: ‘All this is very good, best and nice from you, and we also will respond to your invitation, but now we still would like to stay here for awhile, because I want to show my brother James and also this honest Greek Anastocles the different animals of the sea, and we surely will need a couple of hours for that.’

[15] Cyrenius said: ‘O Lord, that I also would like to see, and for sure also the others over there who are waiting for me in that little harbor.’

[16] I said: ‘Very well, let them all come here because this is the best place for it.’

[17] Then Cyrenius let all the others come to him. There were almost 70 people. They stood along the edge of the raised protruding spot, and soon they were extremely amazed when on the surface that was as smooth as a mirror they saw animals swimming by, which they had never seen before.

[18] Full of amazement Cyrenius said: ‘O endless great fantasy of the only true God. What an endless great fullness of embodied thoughts of God. What an endless diversity. What enormously great sea monsters are coming to this place, attracted by an invisible creating power. This procession is already lasting for 1 hour and by far we still cannot see the end. We do not even know 1,000 part of it by name, and You, o Lord, You certainly call them in Your will to Your wisdom by their name, and all animals are following Your almighty call. Oh, all who are here must watch carefully, because now you can see that which the eye of any mortal man has never seen before.’

[19] A highly ranked person asked Cyrenius if I was the One who made all this to happen.

[20] Cyrenius said: ‘Who else? We certainly not.’

[21] The highly ranked person said: ‘If this Man is capable of such things, then without question He must be a God, and then we surely must show Him godly honor by our priests.’

[22] Cyrenius said: ‘Do not do that, because I know Him already for a long time and know best what He wants and what is pleasing to Him. With a priest we only would drive Him away from us.’

[23] When our Cyrenius had said that to the highly ranked person, he did not pronounce the word priest anymore.

[24] Now the most seldom shellfishes and crustaceans were swimming by and Cyrenius spoke out the wish that he gladly would like to possess as souvenir of this wonderful day some of those beautiful shells and horns.

[25] I said to him: ‘Then you can tell one of your servants to come here with a vessel on the water. Then I will show him from there

which specimens that are already grown-up and he should take out of the water.’

[26] This happened immediately. Within a few moments 3 considerable vessels were rowing under the protruding pointy rock, and the skilful fishermen picked out of the water all the beautiful specimen that I was pointing out and they filled their boats with it.

[27] Then I said to Cyrenius: ‘Let them be placed tonight in lime water. Take every specimen carefully out tomorrow and cleanse the beautiful shell by removing the fleshly content, dry it well and rub the inside with a little nard oil. Then you can preserve them in your treasure room as souvenir.’

[28] Also this was carefully executed and so Cyrenius came into possession of a treasure that was worth a few thousands of pounds of gold.

[29] After 2 hours the procession that passed over, came to an end, and we prepared ourselves to leave our place.

### 31. AT THE PALACE OF CYRENIUS



NASTOCLES the Greek apologized for perhaps not being able to go with us to Cyrenius because he still had to arrange a few things in the inn.

[2] But I said to him: ‘Just let the inn be the inn. Surely it will know by itself what has to be done. However, what you can share with us will be much more profitable to you than your inn. And tomorrow your house – for you already know now with whom you are dealing with in Me – will be ready sooner than when we will go back from here to your house.

[3] During the night it will happen in your house in such a way that no one of your people will notice it. But in the morning, out of amazement they will have their eyes wide open when they will see that they are in a whole new house, which however will be exactly the same as the old one, except that it will be bigger and more comfortable, just like it will be the case with the stall. If you know this now from My mouth, you can be completely at ease and go

with us to Cyrenius where it will be good to stay for all of us.’

[4] Then Anastocles said: ‘Yes, if this is the case, of course I will let the inn be the inn and I will go with you to Cyrenius. Maybe he also will remember me from Ostracine.’

[5] I said: ‘You can easily leave this up to Me. I will take care of it, for I can do all things whatever I want.’

[6] With this, our Anastocles was completely satisfied and he went with us to the beautiful palace of Cyrenius and his highly ranked counselors, ministers and generals, who were all staying in the big palace.

[7] When we arrived in the quarters of Cyrenius, the Greek was beside himself with pure amazement, because such a splendor and such a wealth his eyes had never seen before.

[8] Quietly he (Anastocles) said to Me: ‘But Master, full of godly power, this is simply inhuman. All these treasures and unspeakable wealth that are here. How one person can possess a lot and on the other hand how many hundreds of thousands possess so extremely little.’

[9] I said: ‘But it is better so, because if all men would possess these and so many treasures, first of all they would not have any value and secondly men would soon lose their impulse for activity, and finally would continue to live as the animals in total laziness. Only hunger and thirst would set them to the necessary activity. Nothing else would be for them a prickle and stimulant. However, if such splendid treasures and riches are only in the hands of a few intelligent men, then they have for all other men – because of their great rarity – a hardly calculable value. And by that, men are becoming active and like to work for such rich men in order to earn also a small part of the valuable treasures. And look, this is good.

[10] Sure, you can see here a big quantity of gold and silver and a countless quantity of extremely valuable gems and pearls. If Cyrenius would give you only one of those pearls in order that you should do a certain work for him, then you surely would use all your strength to earn just one of such pearls. But if you would



possess yourself already a lot of such pearls, then you certainly would not use all your strength, but would say to yourself: ‘Oh, whoever wants, can work for that one pearl. I already have enough of them and I can relax.’ From this example you can see that it is very good for the people in the world when such great treasures and riches will always be in the hands of only a few. Can you see that?’

[11] **The Greek said:** ‘Who could not see that when You are explaining it to him? It is true that Cyrenius is a severe man, but besides that also a righteous and good governor. He always thinks about those who are truly poor, although he always is checking everyone very well beforehand if he is really poor or if he is – what is often the case – lazy and does not want to work. And because he is such a man, it is also good and reasonable that he possesses such great treasures and riches.’

[12] **And so our Greek became more pacified and was able to bear the splendor of the palace more easily and calmly.**

[13] **While I was busy with the Greek, Cyrenius spoke with great interest with Joseph about Me and what I had done during all that time, which Joseph and James told him briefly and truthfully, which gave him great pleasure. This asking and relating lasted for more than 2 hours. Also the highly ranked counselors and ministers took part in it and there was no end to their amazement.**

## **32. TRUE WORSHIP OF GOD. JESUS AS AN EXAMPLE FOR MEN.**



**A**t the end of Joseph’s story a highly ranked counselor said to Cyrenius: ‘If all this appears to be true what is being said about this Man, He simply must be a God, because nobody has ever heard that a natural man, only by the power of his will can accomplish such wonderful deeds. We also have seen a lot of magicians who accomplished all kinds of wonderful deeds, but most of the time the people quickly discovered how and with what kind of means they did it. Also,

apparently in the far back country of Egypt there are men who by their will and their look are capable of taming animals, but all this is nothing compared to the power of this Man.

[2] He wills it, and the elements are submitting to His will. He commands the animals of the sea, just like a general his troops, and they obey His command. As far as I am concerned I do not need any further sign as proof that His whole Being must be of a complete godly nature. Because whoever is capable of doing what this Man can do and of what He is capable of, must also be able to accomplish all other things. I dare to say about this Man that He also could create a world if He wanted that. Therefore, we should give Him honor.'

[3] Now I said to that counselor: 'Then how would you go about it to give Me godly honor?'

[4] The counselor said: 'Well, just like we are worshipping the supreme god Jupiter or like Your priests are worshipping their invisible Jehovah.'

[5] I said: 'Friend, I truly feel nothing for both worships, because neither one nor the other is a correct and true worship of God.'

[6] The true and for God valid worship consists of the following: firstly that one firmly and without doubt believes in only one true God who created Heaven and Earth and all that is in it. Secondly that one loves this only and by faith recognized God above all and lives and acts according to His will, and thirdly that one loves also his fellowman as himself.

[7] Look, out of these 3 things consists the true worshipping of God. All other things are idle and have for God not the slightest value.

[8] Only that which is done in love means truly something for God, but whatever one does out of a certain fear for God's might, in order to put God in a soft and a more gentle mood, is for God an abomination. Because for the accomplishment of the so-called religious acts, which are taking place with all possible ceremonial, there are always certain priests who are chosen. Therefore, these are considering themselves as much more

dignified than the other people, and they look down on them. They let themselves be greatly honored and are full of pride. Finally they think they are gods and speak out of their own arbitrariness justice over their poor fellowmen who are often a 1,000 times better than the conceited and imperious priests. Do you really think that God will feel any joy and pleasure at such puffed-up vulgar worships, which are being carried out by the priests who have now been described and who are dearly paid by the people?

[9] I say to you: when such a worship is being carried out in honor of God, and God, in His supreme wisdom would feel any joy at it, He would not be a God but would be like the priests on duty, a blind dumb man full of pride and full of lust of power. How can one think that the true God would be capable of this, who by His eternal love, wisdom and might has created everything out of Himself, and by His eternal goodness and mercy lets it also exist eternally? Where in God's entire infinity is there a being that with success could resist God and would be able to stand up against Him? Everything that the endless space of creation contains is God's thought and will anyway. If God would not want this Earth to exist anymore if it would want to fight against Him, He only has to will that it would not exist anymore, and it will not be there anymore. And therefore, God does not need any other worship of men – those who He wants to make and educate to become His true children – except that they would love Him as a true, holy Father above all and would always like to do that which He is showing them to be His will.

[10] Therefore, I say to all of you here: whatever is great in the eyes of the world, is for God an abomination. But truly great for God is a humble person who loves Him above all and his fellowman as himself, and who does not exalt himself as a lord above them but is only like a friend who wants to do them good.

[11] Take an example on Me. As I am, there is no second one in the world. Heaven and Earth are under My might and My authority, and still, I am meek and humble with all My heart, and I

am here to serve you, high and low. Do likewise, then you will honor Me in the best way.

### 33. THE FREE WILL OF MAN



WHEN all heard these words from My mouth they were surprised about My wisdom, and Cyrenius himself said:

Yes, yes, these are not words as they are spoken by men, but those words are truly from God, because out of each word comes the shining truth as the light comes from the sun so that the most discerning human intellect cannot have any objections.

[2] Just look at our gods and our priests, what a nonsense do we see and what an evil foolishness. And here shines the truth like a sun. Therefore, I do not say anything else except: Lord, deliver us soon from our great need.

[3] There are many men among us who are physically poor, and we who are, according to earthly standards, rich and powerful people, are always able to help if we want to, but all of us are poor according to spiritual standards, and this poverty is much worse than physical poverty because no one of us can help the other. Because what we do not possess ourselves we cannot give to another. But You are infinitely rich in Your Spirit and You can give us as much from Your endless great abundance as is needed to help us.

[4] Most of all, let the full truth penetrate in the heart of the people and show us how we can get rid of the worst plague for our souls on this world.

[5] However, this worst plague is our idolatry and our priests. These are for a 1,000 times 1,000 privileged cheaters of men and they have knowledge of magic and sorcery, or to say it better: they commit all kinds of fraud. By that, they impress the crowd and are – because they most of all are dealing with the people – in full possession of the power over the people, which makes it endlessly difficult for us to instruct the people. For if finally even the emperor would erect better schools for the people, those terrible

priests would all too soon turn the whole people against the emperor and the whole army would be lost.

[6] Therefore we Romans and Greeks who have a better and clearer mind, are suffering a great need of which we cannot liberate ourselves with all the treasures of the world. Show us a way to go against it, then there also will be a light amongst us, and then many 1,000 times 1,000 men will be helped.'

[7] I said: 'This is a good thought of you and what you wish will also happen. However spiritual help cannot be given as quickly as when I have calmed down the storm at sea, for there I only had to deal with spirits and powers who by far still do not have a free will, and consequently they have to obey Me unconditionally.

[8] But every person has a completely free will according to which he can freely do what he wants, and therefore it is logical that his obedience depends on it. God Himself can and may never ever force him with His omnipotence, but He only can put man into such situations that by means of experiences he comes – as if he achieved it himself – to a more pure understanding and this way He can guide his will by his own intellect.

[9] But if God would, by His omnipotence and out of His wisdom guide the will of man, then man would not be more than an animal. He even would be a little below it, for even to an animal a little freedom of will has been given – as experience can show you – and also an intellect and a memory. It can feel hunger, thirst and pain and therefore it is also able – although still vaguely – to think, judge, and by its sound, facial expression and movements it can make known what it needs and wants.

[10] However, if man is – as far as his will is concerned – purely dependant on God's omnipotence, he would be almost like a tree that has to grow and exist the way it was put down by God's will.

[11] From this you can already see that things are quite different with the right development of a human being than with the sudden calming down of a storm at sea. If men had to be treated in this manner, it surely would be foolish of Me to speak with you out of My wisdom and to teach you according to the truth. For in that

case, at once I also could put the thoughts full of light into your soul and then force you by My might to will and to act in no different way than precisely as I want. But would that be an advantage to anyone if I made of him a pure machine of My almighty will?

[12] But no matter how malicious and selfish your priests may be, they also are completely human beings with a complete free will and therefore they can do what they want, and this all the more since your worldly laws are not binding them, and on the other hand because, the way they are, you can use them well for the people.

[13] But whoever wants to free himself from their yoke must search for the truth and hold on to it. For it is only by the truth that every human being has found in himself that he can become completely free of the yoke of darkness, which is a product of the 1,000 headed superstition or delusion.

[14] Once you have understood this, you also should act according to it, then firstly the priests will not be able to harm you and secondly they themselves will stop when they cannot find any response for their foolishness in your field of truth which is full of light.

### 34. THE EDUCATION OF HUMANITY



ow the highly ranked counselor said again: ‘But why would it be, namely for the high priests, harmful to – at least for a few years – compel them by the omnipotence and the wisdom of Your God to end idolatry and teach the people the truth? If God’s omnipotence would liberate them again and they would want to go back to the old idolatry, then the enlightened people would certainly correct them in such a way that they would never more want to deal with this old idolatry again. Am I right or not?’

[2] I said: ‘If this would be advisable and good for the salvation of the people, then God would not need the priests, but He could also

let the trees and the stones speak, which would even have a greater impact with the people. But in both cases it is not only of no benefit for the free will of men but it would merely harm the free development of the inner independent life of the soul. Because if suddenly all your priests would start to preach loudly against their old gods and idols to the people who are now still for the greatest part superstitious and whose convictions are for the greater part based on untruths, the people would consider them as enemies of their old gods, would grab and strangle them. And when trees and stones would teach the people, an enormous compulsion would be exerted on their consciousness and their will and then also the people would soon assault their idols and priests and destroy them.

[3] Say for yourself, who would be helped by that? Not the people. By that they would not have a free but an entirely imposed belief, consciousness and will, by which their souls could not become free as was the case with their old superstition, which now already by many among you has become very transparent as a result of personal searching and thinking.

[4] A belief that has been imposed by miracles would have – as just mentioned – no sense, because it would be just like the old one, a superstition, and for the priests it will also not be beneficial. And neither for you. Or do you have proof that you are really a wise man when you are only answering the questions which you are asking yourself?

[5] If now for instance I would let the pillars speak in this palace and would ask them all kinds of extremely profound and wise questions at which the pillars would give Me such wise and true answers as would not be possible for any man in this world and also not for no angel spirit in Heaven, what would you say on this?’

[6] **The highly ranked counselor said:** ‘On the one hand it would be very wonderful, but finally the pillars would only be able to give those wise answers in agreement with Your will and in accordance to Your understanding, and this would actually be the same as if You would ask questions Yourself and then would answer them.’

[7] I said: 'This you have perceived very well and well answered. And look, it would be precisely the same if God by His almighty will would impress in man the order of life, which once He has determined for eternity. Then God Himself would will and act in man. But if this were the case, then what will become of the complete free independent life of man?'

[8] However, God did not create human beings as so-called playing dolls for Himself, but as completely equal images of Him, which He has brought to life out of Himself, not as creatures of His almighty arbitrariness, but as true children of His eternal fatherly love. And He has given them a creative quality, which is completely equal to Him, in order to develop themselves completely freely out of their own power of life according to their own totally free will until they are completely equal to God. And look, for this reason, the development of men's free will may not be slowed down by any godly force. And even under the most severe circumstances they must be allowed to keep their completely free will, even when it would cost Me My earthly life on the cross.

[9] Look, this is how much love the godly Wisdom has for men, who once placed His children in this world for the test of the complete free will that was given to them. Understand this well and do not ask Me any further foolish questions, because God has set out of Himself an eternal order and this is how it will remain eternally. And now, let us talk about something else if you want.'

[10] Here said Cyrenius: 'But, My Lord and Master in all things, You surely are not angry because of this? We are as we are: still very much earthly men who are slow in understanding and therefore we ask You to be patient.'

[11] Now Joseph said: 'It never took so long for Him. It is more reasonable now to leave Him alone, because He truly has talked and spoken a lot now. And when He is like that, it is better to let Him go and to do what He had advised. Me also, I, as if I am His father, cannot help it. Suddenly He becomes quiet and He lets us talk about whatever we want. Therefore, honorable friends and



benefactors, leave Him alone for awhile, then He Himself will come up with something.’

[12] **Cyrenius said to Joseph:** ‘But do tell me if He has ever contradicted Himself?’

[13] **Joseph said:** ‘Not ever. Whatever He has said once, is as if it is spoken for the whole of eternity, and this happens often with the smallest and most insignificant things. This I can completely truthfully witness.’

[14] **Then Cyrenius said:** ‘Yes, then it is indeed more reasonable to act as He wants, because His inner Being is filled with God’s Spirit and whatever He wills, happens. We, weak men, better do not begin a fight with Him, of which I was already convinced 20 years ago. But now, the question is: about what other things will we discuss? Because He is the most memorable phenomenon of this time, as well as since all other times and will also be until the end of the world.’

### 35. CRITICISM OF THE ROMAN CONCERNING THE EARTHLY CONDITIONS



**Then Joseph said:** ‘Oh, then I can name immediately a subject that is surely attractive to Him. Listen, you all who are initiated in a lot of mysteries, what kind of idea do you have about the creation of the first human pair on this Earth?’

[2] **The highly ranked counselor said on this:** ‘Friend, precisely on this most doubtful point there are more question marks in the world than on any other subject. To say something definite and sure is and remains for us human beings impossible, and the more research one makes by all known nations of the Earth, the more he comes into a labyrinth of uncertainty. Whoever threw himself into the arms of a blind faith in one or the other people’s legend is almost always better off. If he cannot find the truth, he must try to find a lifelike fantasy. Then most of the time he is much happier in such a lifelike dream instead of searching eternally for a truth that is really nowhere to find.’

[3] The Persians have another legend than the Indians and your Jews. The Scythes again another, we Romans and Greeks also another, and also the Upper-Egyptians, and the Germans who are known to me, again a totally different one. Oh, many things could be said about it, but finally it would not be beneficial to us.

[4] Therefore, I am of the opinion that we must forget this extremely unfruitful subject completely, because we never will receive complete clarity about it, just like the astronomers about the nature of the planets on the firmament.

[5] Thus, I mean to say: if after the falling away of this body there really exists a higher and more complete life, then we will also understand deeper truths in that life. And if ever after the death of the body it would be completely finished with the life of the soul, then nothing will be lost if we did not become overly wise. Look, friend, this is how we, very experienced and more developed Romans think.

[6] Also, it is difficult to prove that the soul of man will continue to live after death, but this is still easier than to demonstrate with certainty if, how and when one single human pair or maybe even several human pair have been set on this Earth at the same time or at very different times. Only a God can know that, but never a shortsighted human being whose life is much too short, because if he, thanks to his many experiences is able to come to the understanding of deeper truths, he already has to leave the world. Since I know this all too well, I really am not interested anymore in these things and research. In short, the way this whole life is established on Earth is and remains bad for reasoning man.

[7] Even if we are called to become a child of God, then this can certainly only be attained by a small number of people. Why not by all? Why must about one third of the people die as under aged children? What can they know about God and their future destiny, and how can they develop themselves by the correct use of their free will until they become equal to God?

[8] Therefore, I affirm: the most blind fool is a 1,000 times happier than the greatest wise man, and it would be more reasonable to

occupy ourselves with different things than with such unfruitful observations, because the more man knows and understands, the clearer it becomes to him that finally he knows nothing at all. And for such an extremely boring amusement of life I certainly will not be too thankful. I have said.'

[9] **Then Cyrenius said:** 'Yes, yes, if you consider all this with our pure natural intellect you are completely right, but...'

[10] **The counselor said:** 'No buts. We have nothing else than only our natural intellect. Have we? If this is not sufficient, then from where will we have a supernatural intellect? Man is closest to himself and he does not know himself. Then how could he know something that is further away from him? Just leave me out of it. The nature of man is without his will and knowing, either totally spoiled and of no use for anything, or man is doomed – more than any other animal – to feed his incompleteness and by this be as unhappy as can be. Because I have never seen a wise man who is truly happy. The wiser someone is, the more unhappy he also is at the end of his days. And his greatest friend is then always death. Really, a strange hobby of an almighty and highly wise God: to create continuously and after that, destroy it again immediately.'

### 36. GOD'S PURPOSE WITH MAN



**THEN I said:** 'Friend, you are a little excited because I just presented to you the truth about the destiny of men. But that is all right. I have seen the reefs of doubt in you and wanted that you showed them openly. Therefore, Joseph had to come up with a subject to loosen your tongue in the right spot. You also have spoken well and you have brought your doubts and criticism concerning the human nature well forward. But now it is My turn and I can tell you something quite different than what you think about this subject, which you have discussed now among you.

[2] **Look,** if God had only created man for this Earth it would be a strange hobby from His side to create continuously and then to

destroy the created again. But because He created man for a higher and eternal life, and let them exist on this Earth only as long until they have gone through the strictly necessary test of their free will, or at least through the existence in the flesh, it is a true and living hobby of God regarding His human beings, that He only let them live in the flesh on this miserable world as long as it is strictly necessary for this or that person. When real man leaves this Earth he will be send to schools that are suitable to bring him to the higher and completely true life's completion. There he also will receive a true instruction about the genesis of the first men of the Earth.

[3] However, many a man will – also because of his fellowmen – become like Me perfected on this Earth, but only through the only possible way of the true worshipping of God, which I have explained to you just now when you were considering of giving Me godly honor.

[4] But in order that you may doubt no more in a life of the soul after the death of the body I will open the eyes of your soul for awhile and then you can tell us about all the things you have seen. But I only want to do that if you want it.'

[5] The counselor said: 'Yes, I would like that. Please, do it for me.'

[6] Now Joseph called Me to him and said softly to Me: 'Listen, my dear son of the most high, do not go too far with those highly ranked Romans, because I have constantly the impression that they are already misunderstanding You for some time. The highly ranked counselor has more or less indicated this just now, although before he was in favor of giving You godly honor.'

[7] I said: 'You do not have to worry. What I will show him now will make him change his mind completely.'

[8] Joseph said: 'Then just do what You think is best.'

[9] Then, only for the counselor I opened the so-called second sight by My inner will, which was not spoken aloud, and immediately he was surrounded and encircled even by deceased family members, friends and acquaintances, and finally also

Julius Caesar appeared, of which the counselor was extremely astonished, so that he asked me quickly: 'Is all this the truth or illusion?'

[10] I said: 'Talk with them, they will tell you, because an illusion cannot talk.'

### 37. THE SPIRITS EXPLAIN ABOUT THE WORLD IN THE BEYOND



AFTER that, the counselor asked the spirits who appeared to him if they were real or maybe an illusion of his perhaps bewitched senses.

[2] **The spirits said:** 'We are truth and if you cannot see that and do not want to understand, you are only fooling yourself.'

[3] **The counselor said:** 'Then why can I only see you now and why not also during other times? Why did you not make yourselves visible to me when I desired even fervently so many times to see you?'

[4] **The spirits said:** 'You also could see and speak to us more often if your soul were not blinded by the love of pleasure of the material world.'

[5] The simple first men of this Earth could do that, but when the following descendants sunk still further down into the materialism of the world, they also lost the ability to see the separated souls and to deal with them. Because of that, the darkness of doubt came over them, in which they also lost the belief in a continuance of life after the death of the body and were anxiously wondering among themselves if after the death of the body the soul would continue to live.

[6] And look, this condition full of doubt of the very sensual human beings is a true punishment for their moral perversion, and so it is good. Because without this bitter punishment men would still sink further down into the judgment of matter. And so, the fright of the death of the body are keeping them from it, because they do not know and realize what will happen with them after the

death of the body.

[7] In the world during our life in the body we all have gone through this same punishment and we were full of doubt about all kinds of things. Only the real separation of our body has convinced us that after the falling away of the flesh, one continues to live. And during this continuance of life, only those are doing well who were righteous and performed good deeds, but slanderers and those who were not righteous, hard and completely loveless, are in a bad situation, even a 1,000 times worse than those who are languishing here in the dungeons.

[8] It is true that you are a righteous man, but you are still hard and relentless. When you will come to this world with those qualities, you also will find this strong and relentless justice. But no love and compassion, because not any soul will find anything else here than what he has brought with him in his mind, for one stands on his very own ground here. Do understand this and take it into account, so that you may pass over to us well prepared, because now you have a better opportunity than we ever had.

[9] **Then the counselor said:** ‘Now I believe that you are real and not an illusion. But just tell me who that young Jewish Man is who performs such wonderful works before our eyes.’

[10] **The spirits said:** ‘He is the One who He is, who He was and who He always will be. We may not say more about Him, because His will is commanding us. However, He is with you, you can ask Him yourself.’

[11] **After this, the counselor turned especially to Julius Caesar and asked him:** ‘On Earth you were a very intelligent and mighty hero. All and everybody had to comply with your commands. But how do you live now in the world of the spirits?’

[12] **The spirit (Julius Caesar) said:** ‘Already in the world I had to reap a terrible reward for the things I did for the sake of my glory. That is why I did not bring much good within me to this place and that is why my reward was great poverty and my worldly glory was here like a dark night in which I only was able to see here and there a couple of stars flickering through the thick black clouds.

[13] I was alone for a long time without any company, and I had nobody else except myself. No matter how I shouted, cried, walked around and searched, it was all of no use. I called upon all the gods, but there was no answer. After a long, sad, desperate time in my terrible situation, I came to the idea to turn to the God of the Jews. Then it became lighter around me, and those couple of stars became also lighter, and it seemed as if they were coming closer. When I noticed that, I put my full trust in the God of the Jews and asked Him fervently to help me out of my great need and misery.

[14] Then there was still more light around me, and a star came down, close to me. And soon I discovered that the star took a human form and this man was someone for who in the world I once performed a real good deed. He said to me: ‘Hail you, that during your night you have found the true God of the Jews. Banish your false gods and banish also your own greatest idol, your Caesar glory. Become entirely humble, then I will take you to my house.

[15] Then I turned to the God of the Jews again and asked Him to take away my glory and false idols. After that, also the other stars came as human beings towards me and said: ‘Also we have been on the Earth just like you, but we were poor Jews who were persecuted by your priests, but you have protected us, gave us presents and helped us to return to our country again. Now you are poor, and of all earthly treasures you have nothing except that which you have done for us, and therefore, because God allowed us, we came to you to reward you the good that you have done for us. If you want to come with us without any glory, then you will find shelter with us.’

[16] Then I went and came at once in a wonderful lovely environment. It seemed like a broad valley with a big beautiful lake. The valley was very extended and surrounded with high mountains, which were beautiful to see. Before me stood a couple of houses, just like so many of them that are well known on this world that are called fishermen’s huts. Farther away I still saw more of those huts. The fields were luxuriously green. There were

only few trees but they were full of the most beautiful fruits.

[17] At my arrival I found in the hut – located at the right side – shelter with a friend who in my greatest need was the first to come to me, and there I also found immediately something to eat and to drink. Everything was extremely simple but still it gave me much more pleasure than my great treasures and palaces in the world had ever given me.

[18] When I felt so happy in the hut and had also strengthened myself sufficiently, my friend took me outside again where we discovered a boat on the clear surface of the water of the lake. There was someone in it and with his hand on the rudder he came in our direction. I asked my friend who that skipper might be. And he said: ‘He comes now and then to us over this lake of which we do not know how long it is, and he always makes known to us in a very friendly way what we have to do next. After that, we have to go to work again. We take up the work again that is advised to us. We work with full dedication and with pleasure and delight, and our effort is blessed every time by the God of the Jews. When we came to this environment, just like you now, it still looked barren and deserted. Only by our diligence and zeal it turned into such a flourishing state. Also you will from now on want to work with us and thereby also receive the blessing that we have received.

### **38. THE LIFE OF JULIUS CAESAR IN THE BEYOND**



HIS was very pleasing to me and I went with my friend to the shore of the lake. The skipper landed soon and said: ‘Over there on the shore of the lake, on the right, into the land, is still a dreadful pool in which there are still all kinds of terrible vermin, which is now and then polluting the air of this environment. You must drain this pool. Throw good earth into it until the pool, which is not very deep, is filled up. Then you will improve your environment a lot and gain another fruitful piece of land.’ My friend and also I thanked him with gladness for this advice. He quickly sailed away again and we immediately started



the real heavy work.

[2] The necessary tools for the work that was advised to us were in the house. We cheerfully and gladly took them, went to the place that was mentioned and started to work. But still, I became fearful and afraid when I saw how big the pool was, because there was such an enormous quantity of terribly looking vermin, and I said to my friend: 'Listen, before we will have drained the pool, at least a full 100 years on Earth will have passed by.'

[3] Then my friend said: 'What difference does it make to us how many years will have passed by on Earth. Such a time does not exist here, because there is only one and the same eternal day here, and our time lies in our will. And this pool is only a necessary image of the filth that is still within your heart, and here it is especially your duty to purify yourself of it by a firm will and by patience that was totally strange to you. But I will help you, then this dreadful pool will soon and without too much trouble be changed into a fruitful piece of land.'

[4] When I heard that, I strengthened my will and started to work with great patience. In the beginning it seemed as if the pool would never be filled up, but slowly it became visible that we did not work in vain, and so this terrible pool was soon completely filled up with good earth, the vermin died under the weight of the earth and was buried forever and we won a good and nice piece of land. And immediately we placed a new hut on it, which we put at the disposal of the arrived novices, because we usually are helping them, just like the friend, of whom I am talking, has helped me in my progress.

[5] Since that time the skipper came to us already several times and each time he has given us new work to do, so that our environment changed into a true Eden. I still live there and desire for myself nothing higher, more beautiful or better. Therefore, do not be concerned with anything in this world which is from a worldly viewpoint great and precious, because here, only the works and deeds that are truthfully good and noble have any value.'

[6] **Totally astounded the severe highly ranked counselor said to the spirit of Julius Caesar:** ‘In relation to the Earth, where is this region that you have described so faithfully now?’

[7] **Julius Caesar said:** ‘The described region is surely not to be found on this Earth, but still it is so that it can be located anywhere, because where I am, is also the region. Slowly I have come to learn that the place, the region and everything that is surrounding me in our world as apparently lifeless matter, grew out of myself. Just like in a way a tree on Earth, or in other words: I myself am the creator of the world wherein I am living. I and my friends are living therefore in the same scenery because we have the same love, the same will and consequently also the same way of thinking. But also a lot of other spirits can live on the same spot, and each one of them in another region. This is the great difference between us, spirits, and you, still earthly human beings.’

[8] **The counselor said:** ‘This I do not understand. How can there be multiple regions and scenery on one and the same spot?’

[9] **Julius Caesar said:** ‘Oh, that can easily be, and finally even in a very natural way. Look, in one and the same room are sleeping for instance a 100 people and all of them are dreaming. One is in Rome, the other one in Athens, a third one in Jerusalem, a fourth one in Alexandria, and so on. Everyone is somewhere in a totally different place, and this is so lifelike that during the day he cannot stop talking about it. Well, how is this possible? All 100 of them are in one and the same sleeping room, and yet everyone in a totally different environment. Yes, how come, when thousands of people are on a field and each one of them sees something different in one and the same instant?’

[10] Look, more or less, everything is in the other, or rather in our spirit world. The difference between our world and the one of yours here, is only the following: we spirits are actually living in our very own world, but you are living in the world of God. Because our world is the work of our thoughts, ideas, desires and our will, but this world is the work of God’s love, thoughts, ideas and will.

[11] That is why man is the image of God, has creation power in himself and in a purely spiritual state he can create his own world and consequently live in his very own property. This you surely have understood now?’

[12] **The counselor said:** ‘But then those men who are surrounding you and who are dealing with you are also your work and your property in the world which has come forth out of you?’

[13] Julius Caesar said: ‘Also that, partly, but I could not make them appear before my spirit – and even less deal, see, hear and speak with them – against their will. But this looks very much like the seeing, hearing and feeling of your fellowmen on this Earth. Because you also do not see the real human being, but only an image of him in yourself. You only can feel him by your own feeling and hear the sound of his words in your ear, which is arranged in such a way that it imitates the sound that is coming to it through the air. However, when you are blind, deaf and without feeling, the fellowman does not exist for you, even if he would be very close to you. But even if you hear, see and feel so many people and imagine them in your thoughts, then in reality you will still see, hear and feel nobody if there is nobody.

[14] And so also in the spirit world the spirit with whom you want to associate must be there, at least with his will, his love and his awareness. Without this, you are alone, or the human beings that you can see sometimes for awhile are nothing else but phantoms of your fantasy, does not have an existence in itself, no reality and consequently they also cannot associate with you, because everything what they seem to be, is yourself.

[15] And this is the same and infinite big difference between God and us men who are looking like Him: the fact that only God can call, out of His great thoughts complete free human beings to life, whereas we spirits can only call phantoms but no realities to life. So also, the world that is inhabited by a spirit is rather a phantom than reality, because spirits with a greater measure of perfection have shown to me their world on one and the same spot, and that world looked totally different than the world in which I am living.

But this you will only understand and realize completely once you yourself will be a resident of your own inner spiritual world.

[16] And now I have shown you enough what life is like after the falling away of the body. Therefore, do not ask us any more questions.”

### 39. ABOUT BELIEVING AND SEEING



At this moment I took away the ability of inner sight and he did not see any more spirit. Then, being full of fright he asked Me where the spirits had gone now since he could no longer see, hear and speak to them.

[2] I said: ‘They are still here, just like before, but you cannot see, hear or speak to them anymore because your soul is still too much one with your flesh and is still not completely united with God’s Spirit in him. But if you will strive to unite with the spirit in you, you will always be able to see, hear and speak to the spirits, which are around you. Did you well understand this?’

[3] The counselor said: ‘Indeed, but I am feeling now as if I am drunk. Like someone who sometimes is of a clear mind and soon after that very foolish and says: I will need years before all this will be totally clear to me.’

[4] I said: ‘He who searches diligently will also find what he is searching for. However, man can wear out himself during all his life – which is generally happening all too often – and in this way will spoil his body and even more so his soul. But reversed he can also make great effort unto the eternal benefit for his soul.

[5] When people are attaching so much importance to their body, which will die after a short time, then why not even more for the soul whose destiny it is to live eternally? Therefore, be you also more zealous for the well being of your soul than for the well being of your body. Then there will be more light and it will become clearer within you.’

[6] All of them were satisfied with this lesson and praised My wisdom.

[7] However, Cyrenius said to Me: ‘Lord, why were we also not allowed to see and speak to the spirits that my counselor saw and spoke to?’

[8] I said: ‘Nobody of you is as unbelieving as the counselor. For him an obvious proof was necessary. Now he believes because he realized the wrong reason for his doubt. But the fact that from now on he does not have to search with difficulty in himself for proof that the soul continues to live after the falling away of the body is no merit of him.

[9] However, he who has not seen what he has seen, believes what I tell him. And believing is more salutary for the soul than seeing, because the soul can move more freely in believing than in seeing. I know your faith and know that the works that you have seen Me perform serve as absolute proof for the total truth of what I say, and therefore it would have no sense to show you the deceased who would say to you that I am telling you the truth.

[10] And when by your efforts you will be full of faith, you also will come to the true and free vision out of yourself that will not compel your soul. Look, this is the good reason why you were not allowed to see what the counselor who was full of doubts had seen.’

[11] When Cyrenius and the many other guests heard this from Me they thanked Me a lot for this explanation and after that they were truly glad that they had not seen and spoken to the spirits that appeared.

[12] In the mean time the evening had come and because of that the lights were lighted, and they announced to us that the evening meal in the great dining-hall was served. Cyrenius stood up to invite all those who were present to partake of the evening meal. But some counselors excused themselves saying that they first had to inform their home because otherwise they would wait for them with the evening food.

[13] But I said to them: ‘Listen to the will of Cyrenius. Your families are already informed that you are now invited here as a guest.’

[14] **The counselor asked:** ‘Who was able to inform our families of this in such a short time?’

[15] **I said:** ‘Precisely the same One who is capable to calm down the storm at sea. Therefore stay and believe that it is so.’

[16] **After these words all of them stayed and we went to the dining-hall. There was a special table for Me, Joseph and James and also for the Greek Anastocles with very well-prepared Jewish food and an excellent wine.**

[17] **When Joseph saw this special attention for us he said to Cyrenius:** ‘But great friend and ruler, why this special attention for us who are so few? We also would be satisfied with the food that you Romans are taking.’

[18] **Cyrenius said very friendly:** ‘Friend, I still know you from Ostracine and know that you are strictly keeping to your Jewish laws, and therefore it was my duty to take care of you in such a way that your conscience would not be oppressed. But we, Romans are accustomed to our food, which in the evening mostly consists of the flesh of animals, which you do not eat. Thus, do not feel burdened for the fact that I let this special food be prepared for you.’

[19] **This made Joseph to calm down, and we took place at our table. And the Romans took place at the big table, but in such a way that Cyrenius was sitting very near to us during the meal in order to discuss with us about different things.**

#### **40. ADAM AND EVE, THE FIRST HUMAN BEINGS OF THE EARTH. THE PRE-ADAMITES.**



**E ate and drunk cheerfully, and during the meal when the wine had loosened the tongues, the question was asked again by the counselor who had spoken with the spirits: Was there formerly only one human pair or several on different places of the Earth? Because the spirits did not clear this up to him, and still he also wanted to know this with understandable certainty, because this subject had already come up before.**

[2] Then Cyrenius asked Me if I would like to give an explanation about this to the counselor.

[3] But I said to Cyrenius: 'I could do that but that would be of no real benefit to anyone. And what man really has to know, has been made clear by Moses in his Genesis, and finally still in 2 more books, in which everything is explained, but which is no more approved in our time and is rejected as apocrypha. Thus, he who wants to know how the existence of the human beings on this Earth happened must read Moses' scriptures and believe that it was so and not differently. Then by this, he will completely, truly and really come to know if in the beginning there was only one human pair or for instance several human pair who were set on the Earth at the same time.

[4] I only can add to this, that from the human beings who are destined to become children of God there has only been set one human pair on the Earth, namely Adam and his wife Eve. The spiritual education from Heaven started with them and continued until this hour.

[5] However, the fact that long before Adam there have been beings who look like human beings, is very sure and true. And these kinds of beings still exist on Earth, but between them and the real free human beings there is a very big difference.

[6] Because true man can develop himself to become completely like God and can recognize God and His works thoroughly, compare, evaluate and reach their goal, but this so-called animal-man will hardly be able to it.

[7] The fact that in the course of time, also the animals are accepting a kind of higher development after many efforts of the true human beings, you were able to experience with your domestic animals. Men could achieve even more with the animals if they would be like the simple first fathers of the Earth in a true and complete connection with their spirit of the beyond out of the heart of God.

[8] In the far Upper-Egypt there are still men living there who are like the first fathers. Those are still lords over nature that has to

serve them according to their will. But in order to become a lord over nature, true man must not subject his soul to nature but put himself in the spirit above all the nature of matter and the flesh. For in the nature of all matter lies the judgment, the weakness and death. Only in spirit lies eternal freedom, the true life and all powers and sovereignty. And the proof that this is so, I have given you outside by the sea.

[9] Therefore, strife that your soul may become one with your spirit. Then this will lead you into all wisdom by itself. But without the spirit you always will waver between light and darkness and between life and death and between freedom and judgment.

[10] Man can only achieve the unification of the spirit out of God with the created soul by really and truly believing in the only true God, to love Him above all and his fellowman as himself. Whoever knows this and acts upon it will then also experience in himself that I have spoken the full truth now to you.'

[11] All of them were satisfied with My words and there were no more questions about the origin of the human race on this Earth.

#### **41. THE APPARENT VALUE OF OUTER CULTURAL DEVELOPMENT**



E continued to eat and drink, but of course with measure. At this occasion Cyrenius spoke to us about all kinds of practical things, and about things that were in relation with architecture, and the other guests listened to us and agreed with Me and Joseph in everything.

[2] Finally, a general who did not speak a word until then had the following opinion: 'In relation to architecture it also should be considered if ever the sea ships could not be constructed in such a way that firstly we could resist better the storms than it was the case until now. And secondly it seems good to me that with the bigger ships the oars would not be necessary, because if the oars are attached too high above the board, then too long handles are



needed that are difficult to manipulate. A great number of strong rowers are needed while the oars are exerting only little strength in the water and can easily break during a storm. And if the oars – as is the case with smaller ships – are attached lower, then the water will come in when the waves are only a little higher, and nothing else can be done except to continuously scoop the water to prevent sinking. And thirdly our bigger ships have the deficiency that because of the many rowers they have too little space to take a considerable number of passengers, while despite the many rowers we cannot move, even with a little adverse wind.

[3] Look, my best, young, extremely wise and wonderful mighty Man, You also could give to us Romans, a good and true advice concerning this. The old Phoenicians seemed to have had vessels with which they even could sail fast and safely quite far into the great ocean. We Romans must limit ourselves to sail along the shore and only dare to sail into the open sea during quiet days. What do You think about this?'

[4] I said: 'Yes, My friend, it is not so easy to give you a real good advice on this. Because what use would it be to you when you finally could not carry it out?'

[5] For a good and safe navigation you need above all an accurate knowledge of the stars in the sky. Moreover, knowledge of the Earth and especially of the situation of the sea, the greatness and depth. But you are still far away from having this knowledge, and you also cannot have it because your foolish priests would resist it with all force. Therefore, better-constructed ships would also be of no use to you because you would not be able to use them anyway.

[6] The ships of the Phoenicians were a little more usable but not much. When the wind was favorable they could handle their sails better than you can, but they also avoided the open sea and sailed also only along the shores.

[7] But if you want to improve your navigation you must learn it from the Indians who live by the sea, because they know how to handle their sails, even if this is by far still not perfect.

[8] However, do take care, all of you, that you will reach the

unification of your soul with the godly Spirit, then the spirit will show you how you greatly can improve your navigation.

[9] Besides, your ships are for this time very good and very useful. Later your descendants will build even more wonderful ingenious ships on which they will be able to sail as fast as birds in all directions across the seas. However, this will not add to the happiness of men, not physically and certainly not spiritually, but on the contrary it will diminish it enormously. Therefore, remain for a long time by that what you have now, because a too great improvement in earthly matters is always a true and lasting worsening with regard to the spiritual, which is the only thing that man should cultivate with all his power of life.

[10] What is the use if man would be able to obtain all the treasures of the world for himself but by that, would suffer great harm to his soul? Do you still not know the short duration of life and the final destiny of the flesh? Whether you die as an emperor or as a beggar does not matter in the beyond. The one who has much here, will have to lack a lot in the beyond, but he who had here little or nothing, will lack little or nothing in the beyond and will all the more easily and sooner acquire the inner and only true living treasures of the spirit.

[11] That is why the first fathers of this Earth were such happy men, because they provided as simple as possible for their earthly needs of life. But when especially the people who lived in the lower valleys started to build cities, pride came also into them. They became effeminate, became lazy and soon they fell into all kinds of evil and by that in all kinds of misery. What good was that to them? They lost God from the sight of their soul, and all inner power of life of their spirit left them, so that, like many of you, could no more believe in a life after the death of the body.

[12] Was that not a terrible exchange to lose almost completely the spiritual for a greater comfort of material life?

[13] Consequently, whoever of you who is wise will try to exchange again the useless exaggerated good and comfortable material life for the pure, true, spiritual. This will be infinitely

much better for him instead of inventing how one can safely and as fast as a bird sail across all the seas. Once he will have to die anyway. To what benefit will his great inventions be for his soul?

[14] Therefore, remain by what you have. Do not attach any importance to it, and look above all how you can walk more and more on the way of the spirit. Then, with that you will have made the greatest and best invention for the great navigation from this earthly to the other kingdom on the other side, the spiritual.

[15] Strive fully with all your strength and means to reach that which lasts forever, but take only care of your body as far as this is reasonably necessary for the earthly things. The fact that man has to eat and drink and must protect his body against the cold and great heat, is very natural, but he who cares more for the body than for the soul who is meant to live forever, and finally cares only for the body alone, is truly a blind and extremely stupid fool.

[16] Yes, when someone, against God's will, is capable to procure for his body an eternal life – which is impossible – then he only must take care of the well being of his body. But otherwise, he only has to take care of that which will and must last forever, because God has determined it that way.

[17] If you all have well understood this now, then do not ask me anymore how much you can improve useless, earthly things, for I only have come into this world to show you the ways to eternal life and to prepare it well, so that you will be able to progress safely and easily on it.

## 42. THE WAY TO SPIRITUAL PERFECTION



WHEN all heard these words of Mine they said among themselves: 'He is totally right and nothing can be said against it, but already since our birth we are too deeply immersed in the world and we will not so easily be able to completely detach ourselves from it. According to His speech, which had good arguments, everybody must – by working on it, out of one's own free will – raise out from his material state to the

free spiritual state. And moreover, we cannot cherish special hope for extraordinary help from the true God, because the will of man would already thereby experience a certain coercion while it has to stay free forever. In order to work on it only individually, men as we, have apparently too little strength, courage, will and real persistent patience, and therefore it will be for each one of us very difficult – without getting tired and falling down regularly – to make progress on the ways which He has shown to us.

[2] Indeed, it would be very good to reach the pure spiritual state, and it also would be endlessly more valuable than all the treasures of the whole Earth, but the way to it seems very long and bumpy. That is why, finally, it should maybe not be superfluous to ask Him how long it takes to reach the full, purely spiritual state when one walks according to his conscience, loyally and zealously the ways of life, which He has advised. Because it is certainly much easier to work if, before going to work, he knows – when he works diligently – how much time he must count before it is totally finished. Because it is and remains difficult to start a work if we cannot see beforehand how much work is necessary to finish it, and consequently we can also not know when the goal will be reached. Let us present the just now mentioned question to Him.’

[3] This question was asked to Me and I gave the following answer on that: ‘Spiritual works and spiritual ways are not meted in hours and meters but entirely according to the power of the will, the faith and the love for God and fellowman.

[4] He who could at once deny himself in such a way that he gives up everything that is of the world and – in the right measure – would give his treasures to the poor, only out of pure love for God, and would not yield to the flesh of women, would truly be perfected in a very short time. But he who obviously needs more time to purify himself of the earthly dross and appendages, must also wait longer until he reaches the complete happy making state of true spiritual perfection.

[5] You are highly ranked statesmen and you must exercise your profession, and this is according to God no obstacle that could

keep you away from walking rightly on the ways I have shown you. However, this gives you precisely the means with which you can reach true spiritual perfection all the more easier and sooner.

[6] But do not think that you are the office and the honor and the respect of the office. Honor and respect of the office is the law, and you are only its laborers. However, if you are faithful, good and honest, then you yourselves are partakers of the honor and the respect of the law and the merit of the law regarding the people who are protected by the law and are peaceful and safe, and this will then also be to your advantage before the face of God.

[7] And you are also extremely rich men, but also your riches are no obstacles for the attainment of the pure spiritual state if you will handle it well, being not thrifty and stingy by the support of the poor, with true love for God and for fellowman, like good and wise fathers towards their children. Because in the same measure in which you are showing love to the poor, God will always reward you spiritually and if necessary also naturally.

[8] And if you think that God is not helping at all the one who with full dedication continuous to walk seriously on the way to God's Kingdom and to the life of the spirit when now and then he becomes tired and weak, then you are greatly mistaken. I say to you: once he who has in all seriousness set foot on that way, will also without knowing it be helped by God in order to progress and finally also to certainly reach the goal.

[9] Of course, God will not compel with His omnipotence the unification of the soul with the Spirit out of Him, but He will enlighten the heart of man more and more and fill it with true wisdom from the Heavens, and by that, man will grow spiritually and become stronger and will be able to conquer easier and with more confidence all obstacles, which for his greater trial could still come on his path.

[10] The more love for God and his fellowman man will truly begin to feel in himself and the more merciful he becomes in his mind, the greater and stronger has then also become God's Spirit in his soul. Because the love for God and from that to fellowman is

now exactly God's Spirit in the soul of man. To the same extent as this love will increase and grow, also God's Spirit will grow in him. And when finally the whole man has become pure and charitable love, then the complete unification of the soul with God's Spirit in him has taken place. Then man has reached forever the supreme goal in life that God had set for him.

[11] God Himself is within Himself supreme and purest love, and the same is also the spirit that is given by God to each human being.

[12] If the soul will, by his free will, become completely like the love of the Spirit out of God, then it is also clear that he will become one with the Spirit out of God that is in him. And when he will become like that, then he is also perfected. And of this, no certain time can be determined. However, the soul's own feeling must say and indicate this.

[13] True, pure and living love is in itself completely unselfish. It is full of humility, active, full of patience and compassion. It will never unnecessarily burden anyone and will gladly tolerate everything. It does not take pleasure in the need of its fellowman, but is always trying to help everyone who needs help.

[14] So also, pure love is chaste in the highest degree and has no joy in the lustfulness of the flesh. But the purity of the heart is all the more pleasing to him.

[15] If the soul of man will also become like that by the efforts of his free will, then the soul is as his spirit and is then also perfected in God.

[16] And now you know very precisely what you have to do in order to reach the pure spiritual perfection. He who will strive entirely for it will also be perfected the soonest.

[17] And he who will be zealous and will seriously do his best to walk on this way will always truly and surely be helped by God to reach the supreme goal of life. Of this, all of you can be sure. For if God came already to help you through Me while you hardly suspected that there existed such a way, how much more will He come to help you when you will walk on it by your own activity.

Did you understand this?'

[18] All of them were full of amazement about My teaching words, and even Joseph said: 'I almost never have heard Him talking so wisely and truly.'

[19] Then he turned to Me and said: 'Why did you never teach our priests that way? If one of them had been present here he surely would start to think differently about You.'

[20] I said: 'I feel more capable to convert the fish in the sea than our rabbis. I also advice you that neither James nor you would tell anything at home of what has happened here, because then you will have great trouble with the rabbis. For their heart is more hardened than the hardest stone and their soul is much more impure than a swine in a stinking pool, and I rather would build a 1,000 stalls for the swine of the Greek and other gentiles no matter from where they are than to waste one word to our extremely dumb, dark and malicious rabbis in Nazareth, Capernaum and Chorazin. However, there still will be a time when I also will open My mouth there too, but not to comfort them but as a judgment over them when their evil measure will be full.'

### 43. ARRIVAL IN NAZARETH



LSO Joseph was satisfied with that, and then we went to rest, and the next morning we traveled to the house of our Greek, together with Cyrenius and a few of his servants who escorted us, because Cyrenius wanted to convince himself of the wonderful construction work at the Greek's place.

[2] In a few hours we came to the place and already from afar we saw the totally new house and the also new and big pig stall. There was no end to the astonishment of the Greek and Cyrenius, and also the men from the house of the Greek were greatly amazed and they knew not how this could have happened during the night.

[3] However, I commanded all of them not to betray it before 10 years had passed by.

[4] All of them promised it firmly.

[5] Then Cyrenius gave 30 pounds of gold to Joseph, and the Greek gave him a 100 pounds of silver.

[6] Joseph accepted it for the support of the poor of whom there were always many who had found mercy with him.

[7] After that, we left and arrived quite early the next day, and were back at Nazareth again. Although we could have reached Nazareth the same day because the Greek gave us his pack animals to escort us home, but I did not want that because I had a good reason for it. We stayed again in the inn where we ate pork on our journey out.

[8] When we arrived the next day in the morning at Nazareth, all of them asked immediately how it had been, what we had done and if they received a good profit by a gentile.

[9] Mary thought that the wages could not be too high for the work of a day and a half.

[10] **But Joseph said:** ‘Be calm all of you and keep silent about it to all the people here and also elsewhere, because the people are full of envy about the happiness of their fellowman. Therefore, I will never shut my heart for the real poor, and the name that I already have since a long time must remain as it is: whoever cannot find anymore help will still always be helped by the old, poor Joseph with the little that he honestly is earning himself and by zealous work. But do not say anything about this to the people, and certainly not to the priests. Now all the more it will sound like this: the old Joseph helps the poor more and more now.’

[11] **When all those who were present heard Joseph’s words they took it to heart, and Mary of whom My body was born said by that:** ‘O Joseph, your words are good and true and will be followed by us as if they were a commandment from God. But you three can surely tell us what kind of wonderful work you have performed by that gentile who gave you so much gold and silver for it.’

[12] **Joseph said:** ‘Dear mother, I have already told you that God has been with us in a wonderful way. However, what precisely had happened there, you all will come to know at the right moment if it will come out. But take care now, so that we can have something



to eat and to drink, because today we still have not consumed anything, whereas we were on our way since daybreak.’

[13] **Now Mary went quickly with her helpers to the kitchen to start the preparation for a good morning meal. And in the mean time Joseph hid the great amount of money at a safe place.**

[14] **When the meal was prepared and we took place at the table to take part of it, an old rabbi from the city came to inform where we had been, what kind of work we had done and how much we had earned with it. The greedy rabbi wanted to know that because he had the right to receive an offering penny from our earnings – a stupid custom that was in force in the whole of Galilee.**

[15] **This offended Joseph in such a way that he said:** ‘You know me enough to know that I always have done my duty faithfully, and I also will do that now, but it truly makes me angry that out of greediness you cannot wait at home until I, as always, would come to you. In fact, who told you that I have been away for an assignment with Jesus and James?’

[16] **The rabbi said:** ‘You just left when I came to pay you a friendly visit, as I am doing already for a long time. Then they told me that you went far away with your 2 sons for an assignment and that you would be back home after 3 days because the work was not too big. Well, so I have come now again to see you and to hear from you how things are and what kind of news and special things you can tell about it. Because if you only worked for a day and a half, you surely will not have earned that much to pay an offering penny for it that is worth while. And if ever you still want to give something to the synagogue you do not have to pay in cash because we still owe you money for your last work. Thus, old friend, you do not have to be angry with me because I am visiting you today earlier than usual.’

[17] **Joseph said:** ‘This is actually not the reason why I am angry with you or anybody else, but only because otherwise you do not visit me often, unless you came to know that I went away for an assignment or came back from it. But for the work that I have done for you, you still owe me quite some money, and in exchange of

the offering penny that I have to pay you each time you gladly and as soon as possible would like to owe me nothing anymore. That is why all of you are informing so zealously what kind of work I did and how much I have earned. And if I now probably will have no more work to do outdoors for a whole month you surely will not come to visit me once.

[18] Oh believe me, I always know what I have to think about my friends. But this does not matter because for this reason I still will never be cunning towards my friends. And therefore, I say to you also this time that with this work I have earned exactly enough, so that the offering pennies that I have to pay to you from it are just as many as all of you owe me according to my always very fair calculation. And therefore you can strike out the debt at home.'

[19] **When the rabbi heard that, he looked cheerful and said:** 'Oh that is good. As chief of the synagogue, a heavy stone fell off my heart now. There is now again a very big work coming and even today I will give further information about it. But now I do not want to disturb you any longer.'

[20] **Then the rabbi stood up immediately and went quickly back to the city.**

#### 44. THE DEATH OF THE RABBI



**AFTER that, when we started to eat I said:** 'Oh, how terrible blind that man is. To what advantage will those few 100 pennies be to him? Because even today – and this within 1 hour – he will die. Then, somebody who is better will take his place. That one will pay us for the work, just like we will not keep the offering pennies from him.'

[2] **Mary said:** 'My dear son, are You now clear-sighted again?'

[3] **I said:** 'This I have always been. Only for Nazareth and its dark surroundings I am mute, because where there is no faith, there is also no true reason and no light. Therefore, do not betray Me. When in a couple of hours you will hear in the city the paid lamenting, then do not go immediately to the city out of curiosity

like the other blind people, but stay home, because you already know now what will be the reason. And when the news will be announced here, then say: 'Against God's will, no mortal being can fight. God has determined it like that, and lamenting, howling and weeping has so sense at all'. However, until the news will come, we can work outside, and after the news we will leave the work and we will go to Capernaum. We will find work at the lake until the Sabbath.'

[4] Joseph said: 'This is all fine, but what will the Nazarenes say about this with their big mouth?'

[5] I said: 'These fools may say whatever they want, but we will do what I have advised just now, and then it also will be good.'

[6] After these words nobody said anything anymore, and after the morning meal we started at once to work on a small task, namely making a grain container for someone from the neighborhood.

[7] After 3 hours, a black messenger came from the city to inform us about the news: 'The chief rabbi has died 1 hour ago in the synagogue by a stroke from Jehovah, and immediately he was completely dead. All efforts to bring him back to life again could not help. Consequently the chief rabbi is really dead. Therefore, from now on we may work no more in public for 3 days.'

[8] I said: 'Only 2 days, because the third it is Sabbath anyway.'

[9] Then the messenger corrected himself: 'Yes, yes, thus only 2 days.' Then he continued his way.

[10] Soon after that, we were on our way to Capernaum and even the same day we found in the inn at the lake that you already know, a good work at which we were working until the Sabbath and by which we earned a 100 coins. During the Sabbath we stayed in Capernaum at the lake and we felt very good and cheerful. We only returned on Sunday and heard from our people at home how everything had happened. Many asked about Joseph and were surprised that the always so pious Joseph was not present at the funeral of the chief.

[11] I asked them if they had told them what I had advised to them and what the answer on that was of the others.

[12] Then the maidservant said: ‘When we comforted them this way they agreed with us and continued their way.’

[13] I said: ‘It is good like that. Truth never misses its good goal. And we have earned as much at the lake as the chief owed us for the work that we delivered. And so, also this has been settled. Now we calmly can finish the grain container for the neighbor.’

[14] At once we started the work, which was to the liking of Joseph, because he wished that the container had been finished already, because the neighbor needed it badly. However, there was something remarkable with that container. Each time that we wanted to work on it, something happened by which we were either held up with the work or it was interrupted for days. Joseph thought that this was caused by an evil spirit and was of the opinion that we should not let ourselves be disturbed by him and that we had to continue to work as long as the container was finally completely finished. Therefore, we did what we could, so that in the afternoon only a few laths had to be fixed. And look, the house of someone who lived a little further, took fire. We quickly had to leave our work because of the threatening fire and had to go immediately to the fire in order to extinguish it.

[15] Then Joseph said again: ‘Was I not right to say that with this grain container an evil spirit is involved? Before we were ready with these few laths, a house had to burn, so that there is no way to finish this container today. My dear Jesus, do tell me what You think about this.’

[16] I said: ‘Certainly not what you believe about it, although there is some truth in what you are thinking. Our neighbor, for whom the container is, has a wicked helper, who prefers to have the old container out of which he can, as it pleases him, take grain out of it in order to sell it secretly to grain dealers who are passing by and to keep the money for himself. Although we had been hindered by other incidents, this wicked helper was mostly the reason why the work at the container had to be stopped. Also now he is guilty of this fire, although he himself is the most zealous to extinguish the fire.’

[17] Tonight he still wants to steal several hectoliters of grain from his master, because tomorrow the grain will be put into a new container, which can be locked up very well. However, he discovered that we would finish the container a couple of hours before the evening and his master would use it immediately. Thus, he went to the house of this neighbor who was working in the field with all his people and lighted the fire to it in order to prevent that we would finish the container even today.

[18] And look, Joseph, this is also most truly an evil spirit who stayed at the neighbor's place and who hindered us by the work at the container. But a lot of other things that came between it were of a natural kind and allowed by God.

[19] However, the death of the chief rabbi was completely decided according to the will of the Lord, because the deceit that this rabbi committed secretly against the poor, widows and orphans was crying to Heaven. Now you know how things are. But keep everything for yourself and do not feel offended.

[20] Joseph said: 'But still, we surely have to deliver this wicked helper to court?'

[21] I said: 'This will not do, because you have nobody who caught him in the act. My testimony alone would be as good as of no value, and the helper would then bring us to trial accusing us of public slander. Therefore, let us not do that. But God, who sees and knows everything, will soon give him the reward that he deserves.'

#### 45. THE FIRE IN THE HOUSE OF THE NEIGHBORS



WHILE we were busy extinguishing the fire, Joseph said secretly to Me: 'Do You not have the same power against this all devastating element, just like you have against the winds and the water?'

[2] I said: 'I do know what you want now, but this is not the right time for it now. Let the wicked helper really work hard until he will not know anymore where he stands. Soon he will be seriously

injured by a fall and will be carried away while being in great pain. Only then I will put a definite end to the fire by My will. However, I am taking care now that the flames cannot cause any serious damage to the house. Be attentive now to see what will happen.’

[3] Now, a lot of people were coming from the city, more out of curiosity and because of the sensation than for wanting to help to extinguish the fire. The zealous helper demanded from the onlookers that they should help to extinguish the fire and those who did not comply with his words he rudely called them names. These got very angry with that, grabbed the helper and pushed him with great force off the roof on a heap of burning beams.

[4] By that, the helper broke his arm and received some burns in his face, so that he had to be carried away from there. I said to Joseph: ‘Look, he has received his reward that will make of him a better person. But now I want that the fire will stop.’

[5] When I had pronounced these words – which only Joseph heard – the fire extinguished so rapidly that no more glowing spark could be found. Also, there was no other damage to the house except to the roof, which was of course burned for more than half. But because there was nothing under the roof that could be destroyed by the flames, the damage could not be called big. And we were offered a job again, which however we performed completely free of charge for the neighbor who could not be called responsible for the accident, and to whom we also gave the necessary materials.

[6] However, among the people there was great amazement about the fact that the fire had been completely and suddenly extinguished. No more sparks could be discovered and no more smoke rose up. And moreover, the carbonized beams felt cold. Many said that the reason was that they had extinguished it with dirty water. Others said that God had heard the prayer of a righteous one, and that could be no one else except the helper who had been pushed into the flames by a few offended idlers.

[7] However, the neighbor for whom we build the container said to Joseph: ‘The fact that the heavy fire extinguished so suddenly is

thanks to you, and more precisely thanks to your youngest son. Because since His youth I have often seen wonderful things about Him, especially when He was completely alone. Then He played with the elements and the powers of nature. But for the eyes of the people He – already since more than 8 years – did not show anything of His inner power, and behaved and worked like any other person.

[8] Once I saw when He was all alone and cut down an oak tree. People like us would need a few days to cut down such a tree that was a good 500 to 600 years old, but from the moment that He set the axe to the root, the tree fell already. After that, with the same speed it was stripped of its thick branches. The branches pulled themselves to the side and at once they laid together chopped in the greatest possible order. Then the trunk was chopped in a rectangular way. And also this chopping happened equally as fast as the other work before, and finally also the little chopping and the gathering of the pieces of wood of the tree. In short, the whole work lasted only half an hour. When He was finished with the work, He took the axe, went home and let you know that the oak tree was totally ready to be used for the construction. You only were asked to see it, and during that time you were not allowed to mention it to the other brothers.

[9] Look, this and still more I have noticed with Him now and then, and therefore I am fully convinced now that He is the One who extinguished the fire so quickly. Well, brother, what do you say about this?’

[10] **Joseph said:** ‘Yes, yes, you are completely right and it probably will be so, but what you now believe and know you must keep for yourself, otherwise we soon will have all kind of trouble with the men of the synagogue, which would be very annoying to me. I remember the story with the oak tree very well, and also other things, especially during the last days. However, we must keep silent about it, because otherwise we will cause damage to His future plans and purposes. Do understand this well, dear friend, and act accordingly. You will do well by this.’

[11] We left the place of the fire, went home again and went immediately to sleep, for we had worked a lot during these days.

[12] The next day, a Monday, we quickly finished the container before sunrise, and after the morning meal we went immediately to the neighbor whose house had been damaged by the fire. He asked us to repair the damaged house.

[13] Then I said to him: 'If you can keep silent and keep your servants, also your wife and children, away from your house for a whole hour, you will see God's glory. Then your house will be quickly finished.'

[14] The neighbor said: 'I will keep silent as a grave, and also I will send my men to the field where they all have to work. Then you can do whatever seems best to You.'

[15] I said: 'Good, do it, then I will do My work.'

[16] Immediately the neighbor arranged to make his men leave. We were alone and without any witnesses.

[17] When we stood there, the neighbor asked Me what I would do now. I said: 'Your house will now be repaired in a way that will look wonderful to you. From earlier years it is still known to you that it has been given to Me to perform many wonderful works by My will, but during the time after My twelfth year of life I did not perform anymore because of the great wickedness of the people and their total unbelief. But you belong to the small number of righteous people, and you believe what I say to you, and therefore, now you will again experience of what God's power and glory in man is capable of. Look at your totally damaged house. I, Joseph and My brothers will not take an axe, and still your house will be well and properly repaired.'

[18] The neighbor said: 'Very well, my young Friend, I firmly believe that You can do all that. But as you see, I still do not have any construction material. From where will we obtain it and from where the money and eventually other means to buy that material and to make it fit?'

[19] I said: 'I already talked about it yesterday that we will help you for free, also with the material, and therefore you do not have



to worry about anything anymore. Just look once more to your house, how things are with your half-burned roof. What a pitiful sight. But I will it to be completely repaired now. And look, where can you discover the smallest damage to your house now?’

[20] **The neighbor was extremely astonished and said:** ‘Yes, my young Friend, this is truly God’s power and glory. That is why: honor to God in Heaven, for He has given such power and glory to man.’”

## 46. THE CHARITY OF A FEW CITIZENS



**WHILE** the neighbor was still glorifying and praising God, a couple of some better citizens came from the city who wanted to render a little service to the neighbor.

[2] **But when they saw that the house was totally repaired, they said** (the citizens): ‘Oh, look, the old Joseph has been ahead of us. You must have worked with all might during the whole night in order to repair it completely, and better than what we have ever seen before. Yes, yes, there is not a second architect like Joseph in the whole of Galilee. But how much will our Joseph ask for such a fast and perfect work? Whatever he will ask, we will give you.’

[3] **Joseph said:** ‘I am asking nothing for it. Thus you do not have to give me anything. But give it to the poor. That will be better than to bring it back to the synagogue, as you are always doing according to an old custom.

[4] **One of the two said:** ‘But one should always give a well meant gift to the house of God, if the one for whom it was meant does not want it or cannot accept it.’

[5] **Joseph said:** ‘Yes, yes, this is what a new temple regulation says, but Moses himself only emphasized that with our abundance we should especially take care of the poor, the widows and orphans. Moses has never talked about the maintenance of some house of prayer or house of teaching, except that he has established the tithe for the tribe of Levi. Is this not so?’

[6] **The two said:** ‘Yes, yes, you are right. From those new

prescriptions it is obvious that there is too much greediness of the temple, which God has certainly never prescribed, because He said to all people: You must not covet the things that belong to your fellowman. But the priests are coveting immediately everything that they see that belongs to us and say that it is much more profitable to offer it to the temple instead of performing other good works. And this cannot be God's word because God says only that one should love his fellowman as oneself. Thus, we will do what we thought to do for this friend and give it secretly to the poor.'

[7] I said: 'This is a good thing that you can do. If you want to do that, then go to the neighborhood of Capernaum. At the lake you will find a poor fishing hut. The owner's name is Simon Judah and had an accident during his work, so that he cannot help himself so easily, because a wicked man has stolen his fishing equipment and the fisher does not have the means to buy a new one, and therefore he, together with his family suffers great need. And because he is a person who has always lived a righteous life before the face of God and that of men – which is very well known to Me – you truly will do a very good work when you will bring this man an offering.'

[8] When the two heard about this, they said: 'Oh yes, we know that man very well and we know also that he is a very righteous and reasonable man, but we did not know that he is in such great trouble. Come, then we go immediately to help him.'

[9] The two citizens said goodbye and went quickly to the fisher to give him enough money for a complete fishing equipment.

[10] And here among us is now sitting, as My disciple, the same fisher who 10 years ago has been helped by My advice.'

[11] **Peter** said: "Yes Lord, this has truly happened to me."

## 47. IN THE FOREST OF THE NEIGHBOR



WANTED to end the long story, but our Agricola asked Me if I still would like to tell more that was relating to the time of My youth.

- [2] And I said: “Then listen to Me again for a short while.
- [3] Thus, those two citizens left and we said to our neighbor: ‘Everything is completely in order now with you, but keep the miracle for yourself until there will come a time when it will be meaningful to tell it also to other people.’
- [4] The neighbor said: ‘But what will I say to my men when they will come home this evening and surely will be astonished when they will see that the whole house has been totally repaired?’
- [5] I said: ‘Your men, who are no heroes in faith and who rather believe anything else except in a miracle, will not ask you how the house has been repaired in such a short time because they will think that we have worked on it with all our might and consequently can be repaired in 1 day. Your wife has often expressed her opinion that the carpenters could easily build a house in a couple of days if they only worked harder. Well, this time we have worked hard, and thus, for once your wife was right.’
- [6] The neighbor agreed completely with this advice. We left him and went home to rest there until midday. Then we took our midday meal and deliberated what we should do during the afternoon because no work was waiting for us.
- [7] Jose, the oldest son of Joseph was of the opinion that we could try to find work.
- [8] But I said: ‘There are still other carpenters in the neighborhood who also want to work and live. Therefore, we must not try to be ahead of them. The people know us and our work anyway and will come when they need us, but we will not force it upon them.
- [9] If we want to do something, then let us go to the forest of our neighbor who lives the closest to us and which is only a little half-hour from here. There we surely will find work for this

afternoon.’

[10] Joseph thought that this could well be the case, although he still did not yet receive an assignment from the neighbor.

[11] I said: ‘Leave this entirely to Me. The assignment is his secret wish already for a long time and we will meet him in the forest while he is considering how he can make those 10 old cedars suitable for the constructing of a new barn. He wanted to cut down those cedars this week by his 3 helpers, and only then discuss with you to make them ready for the construction. But because now – as he thinks – his best and first helper lies sick in bed, he is thinking all the time about how, when and by whom he can make his 10 cedars suitable for the construction.

[12] He already thought a few times about Me, since I made that oak tree in question ready for construction, but he did not have the courage to speak to Me or to you about it. Now, if we will offer our help today in this matter out of our own accord, it surely will be all the more welcome to him. Therefore, let us go immediately.’

[13] Joseph said: ‘What kind of equipment will we take along?’

[14] I said: ‘We only need an axe and a saw. Then we have more than enough.’

[15] Then we took the axe and the big saw and went on our way.

[16] Although Mary asked why we seldom stayed at home.

[17] And I said: ‘Because we have nothing to do at home. If we have something to do at home we also will stay home. But you always have many things to do at home and therefore it is also good that you stay more often at home than we.’

[18] On this, she said nothing anymore and we left. Soon we came on the spot where our neighbor was all alone staring at his cedars and considered how he could handle it in the best way.

[19] Suddenly he saw us, came to us in a very friendly way and said to Joseph (the neighbor): ‘Oh brother, you are coming as if you have been called a 1,000 times. You know that I urgently need a new barn, just like that new grain container. In the whole wide environment one cannot find better wood for it than this. However,

it already took me much brain racking to know how I have to make this wood ready for the construction. Often I have been thinking about you, but cutting down these huge trees is actually not a work for an architect and his master sons. That is why I did not dare to discuss it with you until now, although we have talked about it a few times about the necessity of a new barn. But since you are here now anyway – probably taking this way because you have an assignment in the mountains – I gladly want to deliberate with you what will be the best thing for me to do.’

[20] **Joseph said:** ‘You are mistaken to think that we are now on our way to work somewhere in the mountains. We came to this place especially for you in order to do that about which you did not dare to discuss with me.’

[21] **When the neighbor heard that, he was very glad and immediately he talked to Joseph about the wages.**

[22] **But Joseph said:** ‘Only when the barn is ready we will talk about the wages. But let us now go to work at once because the day will still last for a few hours and we still can do a lot of work.’

[23] **The neighbor said:** ‘Do what is according to your ability and knowledge, because I know very well what you are often able to do in an extremely short time. Especially your youngest son. But I will not talk any further about that now.’

[24] **I said:** ‘Do you believe in My inner power and omnipotence?’

[25] **The neighbor said:** ‘Master, how could I not believe in it while I still have so many proofs of it?’

[26] **I said:** ‘Very well then. But take care all of you not to speak about Me before the time. And when it will come, you will hear of Me. Now, give Me the axe, so that I will cut down these 10 trees at once.’

[27] **I took the axe and cut with every blow one tree, of which other woodcutters would need at least a whole day.**

[28] **When the 10 trees were lying there, all the others had a strange feeling, and Joseph said to his other sons:** ‘All of you have doubted Him, although I often have told you: once he who is chosen by God from the cradle will never be left by Him. And

now, all of you were able to convince yourselves how God is still entirely with Him and works in a wonderful way. Therefore, from now on, you should not doubt Him, but also not betray Him to nobody, because He Himself knows why He still wants to stay hidden.’

[29] They all agreed with Joseph and also promised solemnly to keep silent about this and also about every other miracle as long as I Myself wanted it.

#### 48. THE FESTIVE DINNER AT THE NEIGHBOR’S HOUSE



AFTER that, I said: ‘Now the 4 of you, take the saw and divide every tree in the length precisely into 4 pieces.’

[2] **Josès said:** ‘Only with our human strength it will take a long time.’

[3] **Upon this, I said:** ‘Believe and do as I have told you.’

[4] **Then the four of them took the saw, put it to the trunk, and they had barely pulled at it once when the trunk was completely sawed in two. And so it did not take long till the 10 big trees were sawed into 40 parts.**

[5] **When this work was finished, I said:** ‘Now you do not have to do anything anymore except to take away with the axe the upper parts of the trunk, namely the crowns. Then I will work on the trunks in such a way that they will be fit for the construction.’

[6] **The four of them went to the spot, one of them took an axe and the three others cleared the pieces of branches away, which partially could be used as firewood and partially as nails and pegs for the construction. Now, when this work was ready after 1 hour, I took the axe again in My hand and made the 40 trunks rectangular, as they say: with one blow, and this in such a way that out of the thick parts of the stem of the root, 2 to 3 good beams were made. And the pieces of bark were removed from the lower and upper planks in such a way that they easily could be used for the floor of the barn, and the lesser strong planks for the roof of the barn.**

[7] **When I had finished that – which all together did not take**

longer than 1 hour – we laid down the trunks and the bark in an orderly manner.

[8] When the whole work was finished in a few hours, I said to the extremely surprised neighbor: ‘What matters now is that you will take this wood home as soon as possible, because openly in the street I cannot help you in such a wonderful way. So also, the construction of your barn will – although speeded up – be done in a total natural way. For, as already said, in an open place, where we are watched by all the people who are passing by, I cannot and may not perform a miracle because of their unbelief and their hardness and wrongdoing. So take care that this wood will be as soon as possible on the right place that you surely will know, because you know indeed where you want the barn to be built. And because we are ready now with this work we also can go home now.’

[9] **The neighbor said:** ‘Yes, that we will do with the greatest joy in the heart, because a work has been finished about which I had the greatest worries. But this evening, all of you are my guests. A fat calf will be slaughtered and prepared immediately, and for that, every person in Joseph’s house who is called a human being will be invited. Also my best wine will fill the cups of my guests and in Jehovah’s name we will be joyful until the middle of the night.’

[10] **I said:** ‘That is a good idea of you, and it will happen according to an old custom for the workers. But your most loyal helper lies very sick in bed in your house and therefore it is somewhat improper to be joyful in the presence of a very sick person.’

[11] **The neighbor said:** ‘This is true indeed. However, the bed of the sick person stands – surely this will not be unknown to You – not in the manor house but in the house that my father ordered to be built and which is very suitable for the personnel. And that is why we certainly can be very joyful in my big manor house. And so my words will remain. My will shall eternally never have the might which Yours has, but this time You must, my dear friend Jesus, also listen a little to my will.’

[12] While we were already going home, I said: ‘Yes, that I also will do, because nobody in the world has more respect for the free will of man as I do. And until now you did not experience that I ever was against the will of someone when it was for something good, but only against the foolishness of so many people. And therefore, I will, as already said, this time, just like always, listen to your good will. But in return you also should do something that I will ask you.

[13] Look, until now you thought that your first helper was also the most loyal one. However, I say that your first helper, to whom you have entrusted everything, was actually the most unfaithful helper. In favor of his own moneybag he has taken in 1 year more than 100 hectoliter of wheat out of your big container and has sold it at night to Greeks who were passing by. And also as much barley, millet, lentils and also stone fruit. You noticed the loss in weight but you could not discover the thief. You thought that other people did it, and that is why you let us make a new strong container that could be well locked up. But your first helper did not like that at all, and look, he was always the very cunning and subtle cause that we were often delayed for weeks with the construction of the container, because he oftentimes gave us work that was far away to prevent that we could continue with the construction of the container. For he saw that the new container would not be beneficial for his thefts and tried therefore to keep the old one as long as possible. Yesterday midday he noticed however that the new container would probably be finished. He went to the other neighbor and set fire to his house to prevent us from finishing the container yesterday because during the night he still – this in favor of his own moneybag – wanted to sell from the old container a great quantity of grain that was ordered by the Greeks.

[14] But by this, his evil measure became full and I said in Myself: evil man, until here and not further. And as someone who knew very well why he was so zealous in taking part to extinguish the fire, he received his merited reward. Now you know how things are with your most faithful helper. What are you going to do now?’



[15] **The neighbor who was completely taken aback, said:** ‘But friends, why did you keep silent to me about this for so long? If ever I could have suspected that, I would have delivered him to court and have indemnified myself with the money that he received for the grain.’

[16] **I said:** ‘That, you still can do now, and there will not be one penny that you will miss, because your helper is a miser and has safely kept all the received money on a pile in his closet. But now, the point is that you first will do My will if you want us to be your guests today. You will keep your helper. I will make him better but will also remind him his evil deeds and warn him vigorously. Then, with gladness he will give you your money back, up to the last cent, and only from then on you will have a faithful servant. Look, already for a long time I have foreseen that this would happen, and therefore I also have said nothing until I saw that the time had come when it would be meaningful for you and for him, and that will certainly be the case. Are you satisfied with this?’

[17] **The neighbor said:** ‘Who would not be satisfied with that? I thank You, my true Master, filled by God, and best, as well as righteous Judge. Therefore, a true festive dinner will take place at my place and everyone in my house will rejoice. I will remain silent like a grave about all this and never will anyone come to know what my helper has done to me.’

[18] **I said:** ‘Do that, then you will be happy here and eternally. For whoever can forgive his enemies with all his heart, God will also forgive all his sins, no matter how big they may be.

[19] **When we will visit your very sick helper at your home, nobody may be present except those who are here now. However, to prevent that someone would notice the healing of the helper, I will only heal him after 8 days. Put your servants at work for the festive dinner as soon as we arrive, then in the mean time we will handle and solve the matter with the helper.’**

[20] **Now, when we arrived at the neighbor’s place, he gave all the instructions. And also our people at home were informed immediately, and My mother Mary came soon with a few**

maidservants in order to participate also in the preparation of the festive dinner which was ready in a couple of hours.

[21] During that time, we were dealing with the helper. He confessed everything, asked his lord and us to forgive him and gave him all the money from the closet, with the full assurance that he, when he would feel better again, would try to make everything well again by hard work. The neighbor forgave him everything and kept him in service as first helper.

[22] Then we went to the festive dinner that was already prepared, and there was joy until the middle of the night.

[23] Look, these were the deeds which I have performed in My twentieth year of life of which very few knew until now.

[24] But now the evening is already coming, and soon there will be several disguised Pharisees who will come up here on the Mountain of Olives. They will be well served.”

#### 49. DISGUISED PRIESTS VISIT LAZARUS



WHEN I just finished to speak out these words, a servant of Lazarus came into the dining-hall where we still were sitting cheerfully together, and he said to him that several strangers had arrived who wanted to speak with the owner of the inn.

[2] Lazarus asked Me at once what he had to do.

[3] I said: “You will stay here, just like we will do. Only Raphael and the 7 Egyptians will go outside and have a short conversation with the cunning Pharisees and scribes. Whatever they have to do and say, they know.”

[4] Raphael and the 7 Egyptians went immediately outside, and Raphael asked them severely what they were looking for.

[5] Then a very hypocrite **Pharisee** said: “Young man, are you – who seem to be of good origin – send by Lazarus who we know and to whom we want to speak personally? It has become a strange custom here that when we want to speak with the lord of the house they send us instead a boy without beard. Just go to Lazarus and

tell him that we, who want to speak with him, are certainly of a much higher rank in Jerusalem and in all the countries of the Jews than he is.

[6] **Raphael said:** “If you are such big lords, then it surprises me really that you have disguised yourselves in the evening while it has already become dark and gone upon the Mount of Olives on which you have spoken out a ban. Does your curse not sound as follows: ‘Whoever of the Jews will go upon this mountain at day or at night, will be cursed in body and soul’? When this is so, how could you then come up here yourselves to talk with the heretic Lazarus?”

[7] **The Pharisee said:** “What do you understand of this, beardless boy? If we have the power of God to put with good motives a ban upon a region, then we also have the power to lift up the ban at least for ourselves when we want, because we are not under the law but above it, if we are what you think. Did you understand that?”

[8] **Raphael said:** “Listen, if you think that you are above the law of God, then obviously you must be more than God Himself. Because God Himself always comply with the eternal laws of His order and never acts in contradiction to it, and therefore will also never abolish a law in order to for instance temporarily – when He would feel like it – act against the law.

[9] However, if you think that you are powerful enough for it, then you must be standing far above God, because God Himself, as the initial law, exists and acts always within His law and consequently stands within and under His law. When God Himself is strictly observing this eternally, then who gave you the right to put yourselves above the law, to disguise yourselves, so that they should not recognize you and be seen how and when you are transgressing your own law? If you are lords over the law, then why this fear that the people should recognize you if you are acting in contradiction with your own laws?”

[10] **The very grumpy Pharisee said:** “What do you, beardless boy, understand of these higher things about which only the priests of

the temple have the right to judge in the name of God?"

[11] **Raphael said:** "So, then why had Samuel already as a boy the right to speak with God and to judge about godly things?"

[12] **The Pharisee said:** "Do you want to be more insolent by comparing yourself with Samuel?"

[13] **Raphael said:** "Then how do you become more insolent by placing yourselves above the laws of God? Who gave you the right for this? Truly, I have a 1,000 times more the right to compare myself with Samuel than you do by putting yourselves above the laws of God.

[14] But now I have enough of your foolishness. Give answer to my first question why you have come up here and what you want here, otherwise you will come to know me better and will come to the conclusion what is giving me the right on good and true grounds to compare myself with Samuel."

[15] **The Pharisee said:** "This is a secret which we can entrust to nobody else except to Lazarus. Therefore, ask Lazarus outside for us, otherwise we will be compelled to use force to get into the house. Our request to Lazarus does not concern you at all, even if you would be a tenfold Samuel."

[16] **Raphael said:** "What? You have a secret? What can be a secret if even the sparrows are proclaiming it from the roofs to everybody? I will tell your secret so that you can see that your supposed secret is no secret at all already for a long time.

[17] Since those who were send out by you yesterday were not able to inform you where the by you so much hated prophet from Galilee is staying – and this for the very simple reason that they did not come back – you have decided in the counsel to take information from Lazarus who would perhaps be here and could know where the prophet might be. If Lazarus would not be here you wanted to bribe the innkeeper or another servant who could possibly give you the desired information. In that case you would send out immediately all loyal servants of the law in order to capture the prophet and also kill Him immediately.

[18] Look, this is your praiseworthy secret, which is already

known to us since long, and more especially to me, a great friend of the very exalted prophet. Say now truly and honestly if the matter is any different.”

[19] **Then the Pharisee looked at Raphael in astonishment and said after awhile:** “Who gives you, beardless boy, the right to make us suspicious? Firstly you do not know if we truly belong to the temple or if we are Jews, and secondly we say that we hardly know anything about your great prophet. It is true that here and there we have heard something about it, that a great magician is making sensation in the land of the Jews by His tricks and magic. However, if He is a friend or an enemy of the Jewish priests or if they are persecuting Him, this leaves us totally indifferent. We are salesmen and never interfere with such minor things. But if this is so, how can you accuse us of things about which we do not care?”

[20] **Raphael said:** “So, because the water is already reaching unto your mouth, you even want to deny your rank. But against me and my 7 companions here it will be of no use to deny who and what you are. However, in order that you should perceive and understand better that you cannot disguise yourselves for us, I will take the liberty to rob you from your upper clothing, so that you certainly will not be able to deny anymore that you have indeed the qualities that I have pointed out to you.”

[21] **Then the Pharisees grabbed their upper clothing, but this was of no use because Raphael commanded it in his will, and at once the temple servants stood in the well-known priest’s clothing and they wanted to run away. But the 7 Egyptians were quick, blocked their way and made them understand that they had to stay and not move one step to try to escape. If they would not obey this desire, it would go wrong with them.**

[22] **In order to make a greater impression on the now very scared Pharisees, they pointed to 3 great lions that were lying a little down along the way and were behaving furiously. This method worked and the Pharisees – 10 altogether – started to beg Raphael for forgiveness and admitted at once now why they were on the Mount of Olives and said also that he had said the truth.**

[23] **While they stood there in great fear, Raphael said to them:** “Tell me now: who of all the people can be more wicked than you? You want to be servants of God but you are servants of Hell. Which devil has begotten you? The great Master from Nazareth has proven to you with words and deeds, clearer as the sun, that He is the promised Messiah, and as such, also the only Lord of Heaven and Earth – just like it has been predicted of Him through the mouth of the prophets. You do not believe in it, but also, with anger and eagerness you persecute the Lord of Heaven and Earth. O you powerless fools. What do you want to accomplish against the might of the Almighty who can destroy you with the least of thoughts or can cast your wicked souls into Hell, which you have deserved already for a long time? What do you miserable people want to do now?”

[24] **Another Pharisee said:** “Listen, young wise orator, we ask you now only to let us go unharmed back to town again, and we give you the full assurance that we, who are here now, will never more in the least take part in the persecution of the wonderful prophet from Galilee. Yes, we even as much as possible will dissuade others from doing it. However, if we will be able to bring our colleagues to more kindness with respect to the performer of wonders, that we can of course not guarantee. However we can assure you that we will do our utmost best to temper the persecution anger of our colleagues. Because we have experienced now and have convinced ourselves that our blind persecution of the Galilean is one of the greatest follies, which can lead to nothing else except to our ruin. And therefore we will also do what we have promised here. But let us now – as we have already asked before – reach the city unharmed.”

[25] **Then Raphael said:** “Very well then. You can leave again, and you will suffer no harm, but woe to the one of you who will brake his word that was given to me. For think about it, that God’s power, wisdom, omnipotence and earnest are infinite, and a weak mortal human being cannot and will not accomplish anything in eternity against God and His ways.

[26] You can see and understand that the works, which the Anointed of God is accomplishing for the people are of such a nature that only God can bring them about. And you also will realize that God Himself is working closely united with the prophet from Galilee who is so hated by you, and that it would be more than foolish to resist against the decrees of God.

[27] Tell this also to your wicked and blind colleagues. They can increase their anger against Him to such a measure that they – because He is allowing it – will lay hands on Him and will kill Him. However, with this they will have accomplished nothing else except to speed up their judgment over themselves and over the whole of Jerusalem. He can however not be killed because He is Live Himself, and He will continue to live and will bring the whole of humanity of this Earth to justice. Blessed is the one who believes in Him and will search only that which is pleasing to Him and will search His friendship.

[28] Now you know what you have to do, and you can leave now if you wish. However, if you first want to speak some wise words with Lazarus, then this will now also be allowed to you.”

[29] **A Pharisee said:** “If he is here I gladly would like to speak with him, but about something completely different from that of which we wanted to ask him initially. Because you have made it very clear to us why we have come here. But this will be no more the case now. It will be about a much different subject. So it would be very pleasing to us if we could speak a word with Lazarus now.”

[30] **Then I said to Lazarus in the hall:** “Now you can go outside and have a good discussion with the very frightened Pharisees, but do not mention anything about where I am staying.”

## 50. THE REQUEST OF THE PHARISEES FOR A SAFE ESCORT



WHEN Lazarus went outside, he greeted the temple servants according to the custom and asked them what their request was to him.

[2] **The one Pharisee said:** “At first a bad spirit brought us here, and this was actually which we wanted to ask you – absolutely nothing that was good. The words of this more than intelligent and wise young man and the exceptional power of these 7 men who are still standing around us, have made us change our mind and we soon realized how vain and foolish our evil intention was, and because it was unfounded we then also desisted from it.

[3] Now we are asking you however as friends to allow us to visit you in Bethany, where we would like to speak with you in private about a lot of things. Then also, we are asking you to give us a safe escort over the mountain to the city, because there, a little down on the road are lying 3 lions that certainly belong to the 7 men because they appeared immediately upon their call. These malicious animals will probably be well tamed and will serve the 7 men to protect them on their trips instead of dogs, which apparently happened oftentimes. But despite their tameness they cannot be trusted. Even the most malicious dog knows his master of the house also during the night, but he will grab and tear to pieces a stranger, and this could be expected all the more from these 3 lions. Therefore we ask you to arrange that the 7 men would take care of those 3 animals so that they would leave again.”

[4] **Then Lazarus said:** “If your inner intention is the same as your words, and if you want to repair the damage as much as possible which you have inflicted on a lot of poor people, widows and orphans, then you can walk very calmly beside these lions, and not one will look back at you. But if you are of another opinion in your heart than the sound of your words, then it would not be very safe for you to approach the lions. Therefore, examine your heart and say openly and honestly in what condition it is.



[5] Also to Bethany and my house you will not have any access as long as your heart has other feelings than appears from your words, because such watchers, like those three down there, are also watching over my house. He who comes to me with honest intentions has nothing to fear. However, he who approaches my house with dishonest and evil intentions will be bad off.”

[6] **The Pharisee who was the spokesman said:** “You can believe me that all of us are now thinking as I am speaking, and also we will do, if ever we have inflicted any damage, our utmost best to repair the evil as much as possible, but we dare not go alone beside those 3 animals. Therefore, please give us a safe escort.”

[7] **Lazarus said:** “The 7 men will escort you in the safest way if your intentions are honest. But now, still one more question to all of you: tell me, for what reason do you not believe that Jesus of Nazareth alone is fully the true Messiah? You must have read the Scripture, and have also heard His teaching and seen the signs that He is performing. Then how is it possible that you still have such a hardened opinion? Thousands of Jews and gentiles believe in Him, and many gentiles come from all directions of the Earth, bow down before Him, accept His Word and believe that He is the Lord. Only you, who should be an example for the whole people, are resisting against it, worse than hard mountains against the storms.

[8] The Lord came in the flesh as a human being on this Earth, just like He Himself has revealed it through the mouth of the prophets, and now He also does the works, about which the seers have sang centuries ago – which you as scribes should be the first to recognize – and still, as said, you do not believe in Him. What can be the reason for that?”

[9] **The Pharisee said:** “That, dear friend, we very clearly would like to discuss with you in Bethany. However, here I can already tell you that it is now a very difficult matter to be a human being in the temple. One is indeed a priest, but therefore not necessarily a human being. Everyone is an enemy of the other and tries to inflict damage upon him in order to take advantage for oneself, and thus,

as a human being, where one would like to howl, he is forced to howl together with the wolves, so that he should not be torn apart by them. But let it still be for a short time as it is now, then all the doings of the temple will know a drastic change, because finally, one cannot stay there.

[10] Now you also know how we in fact think about it. Therefore, be so kind to tell those 7 men to escort us safe and sound from this mountain to the city.”

[11] **Only now, Raphael said to the Pharisees:** “Why are you actually in such a hurry to return to the city? If you have truthfully good and honest intentions and are also saying now that you want to believe in the Messiah, then you are safer with us here than in the city. You have come up here as an enemy with the intention to know where the Messiah is staying. Right? If you have changed your mind concerning Him, then why do you not want to inform as His friend where He is staying, so that you can look Him up and show yourselves to Him as men who are believing in Him?”

[12] **The Pharisee said:** “Dear wise young man, if we would do that, then it could be charged to us in an unfavorable way, and maybe it would be explained in such a way that we are pretending to be nicer than we really are, in order to still know now from you where the Messiah might be staying. Truly, it is not important for us anymore to know where He is staying. For truly, we are no more His enemies. However, to present ourselves to Him now as repented friends we still feel too bad for this and we are not worthy of Him. And so, it surely is understandable that we cannot and do not want to inform now to know His eventual place of abode, and therefore we want to be in our houses to deliberate further in order to know what we have to do in the future to join with Him completely. Besides, we also have to inform the temple about the failure of our mission, so that they should not send out other spies before they have received news from us, and in this way would cause unrest in the whole city and the whole environment. We think that we have explained sufficiently all our motives that are forcing us to return as soon as

possible to the temple and our houses. Therefore, do allow us a safe retreat.”

[13] **Now Raphael said:** “I can assure you that in the temple they will wait for your notice until tomorrow, and therefore they will not send out new spies. And Lazarus has also enough rooms available in which you can deliberate, and he has food and the best wine in abundance, so that you can strengthen yourselves. Now that you are here, I would like to advice you to stay here at least until midnight and only then go to the city with a safe escort. But if you definitely want to leave now, then we will not retain you any longer. The lions – as you clearly can see – are already gone, and there in the neighboring tent are your Greek coats. Do now whatever you want.”

## 51. THE RELIGIOUS IDEAS OF THE PHARISEES



**AFTER** these words of Raphael the Pharisees did not know so well what they had to do now.

[2] **But one of them said after awhile:** “You know what we will do? The boy must have spoken correctly and truly, and therefore I am of the opinion that we must stay here until midnight when Lazarus can show us a room in which we can be alone without being disturbed so that we can discuss the matter about the Messiah accurately and well, and also still a few other things with our friend Lazarus.”

[3] **All of them agreed on that, and Lazarus guided them by way of another door into the house. There he showed them a large room and instructed immediately to set a table and serve bread, wine and other food in great quantity and also good lamps. All this was so pleasing to the Pharisees that one of them made the remark:** ‘Yes, if this is the case, then we also can bear it until tomorrow and will leave our colleagues in the temple as they are. They nicely will have to wait until the morning to receive notice from us.’”

[4] **All of them agreed on that, and an elder who was as highly ranked as a chief and who had a lot of experience in all kind of**

worldly wisdom said, when his tongue had been made loose by the wine: “Wherever a man is feeling good, he also must stay, and so we will stay here until the morning, and I gladly would like to speak with you, my dear colleagues, a few openhearted words.

[5] It surely is funny what man is. What actually is man, the mortal god of this Earth who tills the ground with his intellect and with the might of his hands and who brings about great works to an harmonious existence? I tell you: man is nothing else than a very pitiful animal because he knows that he must and will die, while no animal seems to have any notion of it. That is why it can live with a very quiet mind until the moment of its death without ever having one thought that one day it has to die. Therefore, it would be better for man to cheer up a little his pitiful life now and then and to chase away for a few moments the dark thoughts about death.

[6] The power, which man has called into existence, can according to my opinion never be wise and good, just like a man who creates the most ingenious works can never be called wise and good, for he destroys them afterwards when they have reached their highest completion and takes away entirely their existence, and immediately after that he makes the same piece of work again for the same purpose.

[7] After all, concerning God as the all-creating power, one cannot imagine anything wise and good. Because if that power would be good and wise, then He also would have taken care of the survival of His most ingenious works, like we human beings are. But there is no question of it. When man at high age has reached a greater perfection in knowledge, thinking and acting, then he already starts to die. He becomes weaker and weaker, his vital strength is weakening every day, and this continues until he has blown out his last breath. What will happen with us after that, you all know, and it is not necessary to describe this further.

[8] Although in our teaching about God we have the assurance that in material man there still lives a spiritual man who continues to exist after the falling away of the body. But what can man do with

a teaching and the consequent faith if no irrefutable proof has been given to anybody about this?

[9] How many exalted fathers, wise men and prophets did not exist before us and have lived according to the wisest laws. Undoubtedly they believed in a God, prayed to Him and loved and honored Him exceedingly and believed also firmly in an eternal life after the death of the body. But finally these great and wise heroes of faith still had to die, and nothing was left except their name and their deeds and teachings that are written in the Scripture. But where did their souls go?

[10] In fact, which one of us has really ever seen or spoken to a soul who continued to exist somewhere? At most, in a dream or in a malicious fever heat. It is true that there are people who claim that they have spoken with souls of people who died, but these are people who are totally lacking the knowledge and a sense of judgment, and they often take pleasure in telling other people out of their living fantasy and imagination about supernatural things in order to give themselves by that a certain mystical appearance at which they are more attached than a magician to his pure profit.

[11] One must also admit that from time to time there are people whom, in order to emphasize their statements and teachings are performing wonderful deeds, and by that they want to put their stamp of truth upon it, just like we are experiencing now with the truly remarkable prophet of Nazareth. Besides, He teaches the people very well and promises to everyone who believes in Him the eternal life of the soul.

[12] Yes, all this is very nice and even good, because this is giving many people a certain reassurance and takes away from them the fright of death. But this was also done by the old prophets, and thousands of men have believed firmly and have even sealed their faith with martyrdom. However, time has snatched away those great prophets, together with their believers, and nothing else is left of them except their names and deeds that are written in the Scriptures and which we also have to believe without any further proof.

[13] Why then is it that no soul who continues to live somewhere in the beyond comes to us, who would say to us for instance: 'I am Elijah, Daniel or Isaiah who continues to live very happily in the beyond'? I say to you: just like the old prophets and also Moses have perished, so we also will perish, together with the so famous prophet who even seems to awaken the dead, and the future descendants will inherit from us and from Him precisely that which we have inherited from the old prophets. Even if faith will continue to exist perhaps for many centuries with many additions and falsifications, then the living true conviction will still be exactly the same as the one which we have now about the survival of the soul after the death of the body.

[14] Although such a continuance of the soul after the bodily death would be something invaluablely exalted, and a man would certainly do everything to assure himself completely of such a life if somehow he would have solid proofs of it. But this was always lacking, and therefore it is not surprising that the once so firm faith of the elders has been cooled off with us.

[15] Who of the more civilized and experienced part of the people are actually still visiting the temple in full faith nowadays? The highly ranked people and wise men are only entering the temple because of the common people, and they pretend that their faith is firm like a rock, so that the people would think by themselves and say: 'There must be some truth in it, for the highly ranked people, scientists and wise men who can know everything, are attaching much importance to it.'

[16] Therefore, I truly am not an enemy of this famous Galilean because He makes the poor people again enthusiastic for a life of the soul after the death of the body and gives them good comfort. But I do not think it is right that at each opportunity He is indicating that we are the greatest imposters of the people. And as someone who is passing Himself off for a wise Man, He is not considering that basically He is doing the same as that of which He is accusing us of. If only He would tell the people the truth, just like I am doing now, namely as the old experience teaches us,

then He probably would not have as many followers as He is having now.

[17] This is my true belief and my honest confession before you my colleagues which however I only have spoken out between us, because I really know that you all are thinking exactly the same as I do. In the temple, in presence of the people and our many and very blind colleagues it is however necessary to speak differently. What do you think about this opinion?"

## 52. A SCRIBE REFERS TO GOD'S ORDER



**NOTHER scribe said:** "I cannot say that you are wrong and I share your opinion in many aspects, but I actually cannot accept your opinion as a totally settled truth. Because I cannot believe that God as the very wise Creator of Heaven and Earth, who actually continuously maintains the sun, the moon, the stars and the Earth should have created us as perfect works of His wisdom and power only to serve Him as His perishable playing dolls.

[2] Man has only a short life to live on this Earth, and the reason of this seems to be that his soul has to develop in the body in a certain way and must acquire a certain and durable solidity, so that he can continue to exist in another world that must be limitless and which corresponds with his being.

[3] For if man with his body and soul would only be destined for this material world that, although it is so big, still has its limits, then as a result of the continuous increase of the number of human beings – if they would be immortal as far as their body is concerned – this Earth would soon be too small and too limited for the human beings. Even more so because it consists of much more water than firm habitable land. After a certain time, God would have to make the human beings impotent and also stop their aging process so that they could continue to live forever with a certain normal power and strength and cultivate the ground of the Earth for their livelihood.

[4] However, we can believe with certainty that after a certain period of time men would have enough of such a necessary monotonous life, because indeed, the daily experience teaches us that everybody starts to be very bored when he has to live in always the same life conditions and will be languishing for a change. And since after many thousands of years even the most inventive person will still have come at the end of all his favorite changes, he finally would come into the greatest boredom, which by no means he will not be able to chase away.

[5] After these thorough observations it surely seems that God's wisdom has created men for another, higher and freer life and not for a world that is limited in everything, which is however good enough to serve men as a first step in development, but can never be intended to give him an eternal happy existence.

[6] For this and still a lot of other reasons I believe in the immortality of our souls, because if these would be mortal we have to represent God – whose power and highest wisdom is clearly seen in all His works, just as His goodness and His justice – as unwise or even as completely not existent.

[7] No reasonable thinking human being can assert that some blind and dumb power could bring pieces of work like we men are, to an orderly existence. Because what one does not possess he can impossible give to someone else. Give for instance to someone who is very stupid and who is hardly capable to chatter his mother tongue, an assignment as teacher of a foreign language in a school. What will he accomplish? Nothing more than a statue. That is why there must exist a very wise and almighty God, and anyone who can think clearly will have to recognize this as truth.

[8] However, if the almighty God is very wise, then He also must be very good and just and He surely must have good intentions with us human beings. And through the mouth of the prophets and other wise men, He also must have announced to other men what kind of intentions He has with us people, and what man should do in order to already on the Earth enjoy a happy pre-existent life, and by means of this pre-existent life make himself as capable and



receptive as possible for the next eternal life.

[9] However, a God who has done that and still continues to do that, did not create a mosquito, and certainly not us men as pitiful toys for His whims. Or can one perhaps imagine a good man who would take pleasure to see how his poor fellowmen are continuously tormented in the most horrible manner? As far as I have observed the people in every respect, I have always noticed that God in no way is harming people. This is what people are doing to each other and all too often mostly to themselves. Because firstly their never satisfying selfishness and greed drives them to persecute each other as much as possible and by this they harm each other with all kinds of evil things. And because they no more pay attention to the revealed will of God, they catch all kinds of diseases through the most disorderly ways of life, which are highly poisoning this pre-existent life.

[10] Question: are God's wisdom and goodness also somehow guilty of this? If this would be the case, then the highly to be honored people who continuously have lived according to the laws of God would have before their passing away from this world also be tormented by such malicious diseases just like those who since their youth have lived a godless life and by this have brought the nature of their being into the greatest disorder. Oh no, I already have convinced myself about it very often that man who lives according to God's order will most of the time also reach a high age of life, and in the end he dies a remarkable soft death.

[11] Here and there are also examples of pious and righteous men who finally separated from this world and did not exactly die such a soft death. But by that we always can assume two cases, namely that God will try someone's patience more heavily, so that his soul will receive all the more strength for the life in the beyond. Why? This certainly will be well known by God.

[12] In the second case however, the aged person who became pious and righteous could have disturbed the order of his body by the many sins of his youth, and this can have equally as many bitter consequences, which for him will not exactly make his last

hours the most pleasant. But we can be absolutely sure that people who since the beginning have lived according to God's order, always will die a very soft death.

[13] This is now my opinion of which I myself will stay loyal unto the end of my earthly life. Everyone of you can believe and do what he wants."

### 53. THE PHARISEES TALK AMONG EACH OTHER ABOUT THE EARLY DEATH OF CHILDREN AND ABOUT THE MESSIAH



**WHEN the first speaker said:** "Yes, I truly cannot reply anything on this, except that with all your good ideas you did not give us any clarification about how the early death of children can be reconciled with the wisdom, goodness and justice of God.

[2] According to your idea, man has been called by God to acquire a true and to God pleasing solidity of his soul by means of a good ordered pre-existent life on this Earth, because the fact that this is the purpose of God appears clearly from all revelations which came to us through the mouth of the first patriarchs and the prophets. But what happens in the beyond with the children of which, because of their early death, a disordered, and even less an ordered pre-existent test life was actually not possible? If the soul of man can only reach the solid, true eternal life through a good ordered pre-existent test life, how is this possible for the soul of a child to reach it? Or does the soul of the child die together with the body?"

[3] **Then the second, good speaker said:** "From the early times of men it is not known if children have died during that time. The early death of children is only caused by the sins of the parents, and therefore, consciously or unconsciously, the early death of their children is their fault. But God in His highest wisdom will also know how to take care of the innocent souls of children. They certainly will be able to catch up with what they have failed to do

here when it was not their fault.

[4] Is this Earth the only world? Let us take a look at the starry sky. Great wise men from ancient times and even Moses in his supplement books that we still have but in which we do not believe anymore, have pointed out that the sun, the moon and all stars are worlds and are often a lot bigger than ours. If this is so, then it also will not be so difficult for God's wisdom and power to show the souls of the children another and perhaps also in many aspects better world to live in, upon which they can reach their completion of life.

[5] There is really no question to the fact that God has still other school worlds in the eternal great space of creation for the human beings. We as small and weak human beings have also more than one school building for our children. If this is possible with us powerless human beings, then why should that be impossible for the almighty and very wise God?

[6] The patriarchs, who certainly were more in contact with God's Heaven than we now, knew very well that this is so. We however, by our materialistic worldly attitude have lost everything that is of the spirit, and we hardly know anything about it anymore. Although I also am a material man, but I have learned and experienced many things and therefore I speak now as I speak. Of course, in the temple in the presence of everyone I cannot speak like that."

[7] **The first speaker said:** "Now I have no more objections and I am truly glad that you have changed my mind. But now it is time to return to our main subject, namely the wonderful prophet from Galilee. In the beginning I made immediately the remark that on Earth there are always special men from whose words and deeds we easily and indisputably can recognize a higher intelligence equal to God, as this seems now to be the case with our Galilean.

[8] But also other people do not lack identical gifts. Take for instance today the sudden disappearance of our coats and the magical appearance of the 3 lions. This is a real wonder that a simple human being cannot understand. Now, these people could

say: 'I or he over there is your Messiah because he is capable to perform wonders', which we however cannot accept, because if we would do that, then it soon would entirely be crowded with messiahs. The Essenes are also performing wonders, but for this reason they are by far no messiahs. The Galilean however presents Himself to us as such. What can we say about this?"

[9] **The second, good speaker said:** "My opinion – that I however was not able to express for understandable reasons – is as follows: His teachings and deeds are well known to me. As far as His life and way of acting are concerned, He is the most pure Jew, completely according to the meaning of Moses. However, how things are with us in the temple with the best Moses, this we all know very well. And also He seems to know it perfectly, otherwise He would not have added such hard words to us this morning. Moreover, with the born-blind man He has performed a true wonder of God, only by His will, which before was possible to no one. And thus, I am of the opinion that we as sharp observers must leave the matter alone. Time will give us advice. If finally He still is the One who He openly proclaims to be before all the people, then we will do eternally nothing against Him. If finally He is not the One, then He also will not do anything against us, despite all His wonders.

[10] The best is to secretly examine all His teachings and deeds. If we see that those are totally pure and His deeds totally of a godly nature, then we will also believe in Him. However, if in our eyes He does not comply with this condition, then we will stay as we are and will leave everything else to God."

[11] All of them agreed on this and they continued to eat and drink.

[12] After this speech, Lazarus went at My order to them again. He knew what they all had said because I told it to everyone.

## 54. LAZARUS TELLS ABOUT HIS EXPERIENCES WITH THE LORD



WHEN the well-satisfied Pharisees saw Lazarus they all expressed their joy about the fact that he came to them without being called.

[2] He also greeted them, saying (**Lazarus**): “It is a great satisfaction to me that you are feeling so well at this place that you have cursed. And since everything is known to me what you have discussed here in private, I think that you, who are really wise men, will not make use now of your ban over my possessions.”

[3] **The first speaker said**: “This certainly not, but how – by Moses – were you able to hear at closed doors and windows what we have spoken to each other as soft as possible? Tell us the content of our speeches, otherwise we will have to believe that you want to make fun of us.”

[4] Here Lazarus declared to them solemnly that he would never do such a thing and then he repeated word for word everything that they had discussed with one another before.

[5] **When the Pharisees heard that, the first one said again**: “But how – by all stars of the sky – were you able to know that?”

[6] **Lazarus said**: “You yourself have said with your own words that there are people in the world who possess rare qualities. Why could God not have given me some rare qualities? But I can tell you even something more important, and this is that you as a result of your understanding and speaking can be very close to God’s Kingdom if the bad air of the temple would not be a obstacle to you. However, I am saying this particularly to the one who was discussing with you, with whom you finally agreed on all points, as well as all the others. Consequently, all of you – truly to my great joy – are standing now at one and the same spot with this really very respectable person with whom you were discussing, because now, there will not be many men of your kind anymore in the temple. Therefore, I say to you, as your old and true friend, that you are now standing closer to the Kingdom of God than

you suspect.”

[7] **Now the second speaker said:** “Dear friend, explain yourself further. What do you want to tell us with this? How can we be closer to the Kingdom of God than we can suspect? Do we perhaps have to die here? Did you put poison into our wine?”

[8] **Lazarus said:** “How can you ever as truly intelligent people think such thing? I am immediately willing to drink out of your cups to proof how untrue this thought is. You will be able to live long enough on this Earth. Only by your knowledge you have come close to the Kingdom of God and by your secretly kept faith, but not with your earthly lives.”

[9] **The first Pharisee said:** “What do you mean with the Kingdom of God?”

[10] **Lazarus said:** “Nothing else than that in your mind you possess the right knowledge of God. Besides, if you also would accept Him whom you have persecuted until now as the One who He truly is, then you already would be completely in God’s Kingdom that is full of light. Do you understand now what I wanted to say with: you have come closer to the Kingdom of God than you can suspect?”

[11] **Then the first speaker said again:** “Now, it is good that you are mentioning this subject. The fact that you are very fond of the wonderful Galilean, we do know already for a long time. And we have made it known to you – rightly or not. This is nothing new to us. But since you surely must know that Man better than we do and that we are hopefully now good friends again – because you have by your talent, which formerly was unknown to us, convinced yourself about how we actually think about it – it is now maybe the best moment that we get to know that Man better. You do not have to tell us at all by that where He is staying for the moment because we do not want and will not ever make use of the ridiculous decision of the temple anyway. And we also do not want to know the Galilean better because of the cunning temple priests, but only for our sake. Therefore you can now speak very openly with us about Him.”

[12] **Then Lazarus said:** “How and where He was born and all the things that happened when 30 years ago the old evil Herod let as much as possible innocent little boys of 1 to 2 years old be killed in Bethlehem because the 3 wise men from the far morning land who were guided by a star towards here told him that in Bethlehem a new King had been born among the Jews, that you all will know as well as I do. But you do not know that by godly providence and decree this new-born King of the Jews did not fall into the hands of the cruel Herod, but with God’s help and through mediation of the at that time still young Roman captain Cornelius He escaped safely and soundly to Egypt. I think to the old city Ostracine. And only then, when the old Herod died 3 years later because he was eaten up by lice, He came back, more precisely in the vicinity of Nazareth. And there, in quiet seclusion He grew up with an education that is not worth mentioning and has become a grown-up Man.

[13] When He was 12 years old He came with His earthly parents to the prescribed examination of boys to Jerusalem. He stayed 3 full days in the temple and brought all the elders, scribes and Pharisees to total amazement by His answers and questions. My father who paid the examination fee because of the poverty of His parents told this to me.

[14] Also this, will surely be remembered by the elders among you, although not the fact that He escaped from the rage of Herod and that after 3 years He came back from Egypt to Nazareth.

[15] And look, the Man who is now performing such great works, only with the pure godly power of His will and His word, is precisely the same as the King of the Jews who was born 30 years ago in Bethlehem, and precisely the same wise young Man who 20 years ago has brought the whole temple to total amazement.

[16] Now you know with who you are dealing with in the person of the so extraordinary Galilean, and this is certainly also necessary in order to have a good idea about Him.

[17] What He is doing now, you partially know, but for more than half you are taking the things that were told to you about His

teaching and deeds as fables and exaggerations of the people who are following Him and believes in Him. And in this you are greatly mistaken.

[18] I truly am not the man – as you know me – who will buy a pig in a poke. Therefore, I have assured myself very accurately for a long time and at different places to know what kind of Man He really is. And look, even if I also am well grounded in the Scripture, I never found anything suspicious in Him, while this was often the case with the loud-voiced magicians.

[19] His teachings are entirely those of Moses and the prophets, and He performs His wonders only where it is necessary, and He never let Himself be paid for it. In short, His powerful Word is the purest Word of God, His wisdom is God's wisdom, and His deeds are also purely God's deeds, because no man is capable of doing the same.

[20] When I went, more than half year ago with Him and His at that time many disciples to Bethlehem, we found a great number of beggars before the gates of the old city of David, because there was a feast. Those poor people, men and women, begged us with loud lamenting for alms. The most deformed who were without hands and some also without feet were crying the most, and therefore I also wanted to remember them according to my wealth.

[21] He however, indicated that there was still enough time for that, and then He asked the poor people that if ever they would be totally healthy and would have their limbs back, they would not prefer to earn the necessary bread with the work of their hands. All of them certified that if that would be possible, they would rather work day and night instead of asking even for one moment longer for alms. Then He said: 'Stand up and walk and search for work.' On this word, all of them were immediately healed from their various diseases. The blind could see, the deaf and mute could hear and speak, the paralyzed jumped up as young deer and the deformed without hand and feet received – mind you – clearly new limbs, and this all was the work of only one moment. Afterwards I put all these wonderfully healed people with me into service, gave



them immediately some money and gave instructions to know where they had to go.

[22] When one has been the very witness of such a deed and of still a 100 more of which one cannot say anymore: ‘look these were greater and more memorable than the other’, and when one has seen that also all animals, all elements, the whole nature, even the sun, the moon and the stars and the seas of the Earth, as well as the mountains obey His will, and He Himself says: ‘I and the Father in Heaven are one. He who sees Me, sees also the Father. He who believes in Me, will have eternal life, for I Myself am the Truth, the Way and the Life’, then one with his healthy senses and his healthy mind cannot doubt anymore that it is as He is teaching and as since Adam, all fathers, patriarchs and prophets have predicted and taught about Him.

[23] Now I believe fully and unshakably in Him, and dare also to confess this loudly to the whole world, because I have my irrefutable reasons for that. Anyone however can do what he wants. Now you know in short and in full truth the most important concerning the great Galilean. Consider now among yourselves what you have to think and believe about Him.”

## 55. LAZARUS ACCUSES THE INDIFERENCE OF THE PHARISEES



**HE second, good speaker said:** “Yes, friend Lazarus, I surely cannot say that you are not right in this, because if I would be in your place I also would do what you are doing. But I better keep those things secret, as well as every other better conviction because in my position I cannot openly swim against the stream of the world. You however are a very rich and by your Roman citizenship a completely free man and you can do as much good as you want. Nobody can cross your plans. However, how things are with us as temple servants, this you know. For this reason we can only adhere to the truth in silence. But in public however we have to tell lies. The fact that in this

lying world things are like that with us who are still from the older and better times and who can understand the truth for ourselves, you know as well as we do.

[2] I believe now what you believe and this is the way it is and it will never be different since there are too strong and undeniable proofs of all kind which are speaking and witnessing all too clearly in favor of it. Yet, we can do something openly for this case: apart from the fact that we in the counsel are neither for nor against it, we can unconditionally abstain from every vote, and at a good opportunity we can make it clear that in this situation every attempt for persecution is completely useless. And I believe that in this way we – although not directly beneficial – still will not have an obstructing influence for the good cause and can finally not be considered as entirely bad. What is your opinion about this, friend Lazarus?”

[3] **Lazarus said:** “Friend, to say it honestly: when one is completely convinced in himself of such a great truth, which is surpassing all the sunlight, but dares not to speak out openly before the eyes of the world in favor of this truth – no matter what kind of position one may have in this world – then he can be compared to a man who is neither cold or warm. If I think about it now and if I according to the strongest and most irrefutable proofs must acknowledge in faith: ‘that is the Lord Himself, by whose love, mercy and will I am living’ – as all the prophets have predicted about Him – then only He means everything to me and the whole world and the whole temple means nothing anymore. Now He has fulfilled what He has promised. He who has given the commandments on the Sinai to Moses and to our fathers, is now bodily among us and shows us through words and deeds that He is the One, the eternal faithful true Jehovah. How is it still possible for a man to behave in such a lukewarm manner at such an important matter of life?

[4] If I were in your place I would – since you perceive that the temple as it is now will not hold out much longer – take my riches and try to become a real disciple of life of the Lord. From now on

you cannot gain much in the temple for your earthly life, because the offerings are becoming smaller every year, for understandable reasons that are known to you. Besides, slowly you are coming at the end of your earthly years of life and you must say to yourselves: we probably will not stay much longer on this world. And then what?

[5] About the life in the beyond you are, according to my best knowledge suspecting something, but by far you still have no certainty. The Lord, who is now incomprehensibly among us as a Man could show you the life in the beyond and assure you of the future life, and that would surely be for you the greatest gain of life. What do you think about it?"

[6] **The first speaker said:** "Yes, yes, friend, you have spoken very well, and it probably will be the same for the Galilean, but one should also think about how he can in a good manner free himself from the temple without being noticed by the other colleagues. If we were not the most elderly of the temple we could leave the temple by some pretext, for example as Jewish apostles to convert gentiles to the Jewry, but we are already too old for that and are holding the most important positions in the temple, and therefore this is a difficult matter.

[7] We could retire on payment of one tenth of our riches, but by that we would harm the good cause of the exalted Galilean more than it would do any good, because if we would leave our position in the temple, it soon will be taken by others who definitely are lying in wait for that. Those replacements, as new brooms would certainly resist the good cause of the Galilean more furiously than we who at least know now through you what we have to think about Him.

[8] Now we can work in the high counsel in a moderate way for the Galilean, and so we can eliminate many obstructions for His exalted teaching, because we as elders of the temple have still a great influence on the high priest who is a true tyrant for those around him. At a good opportunity we can also tell many extraordinary things and show him who the Galilean is who is

hated so much by him, and that it is madness to resist someone whose will is capable to destroy the whole world in one moment. [9] If we clearly impress this upon him, his fierce zeal will certainly cool of, and he will not often deliberate day and night how the Galilean with all His followers can be caught and be brought to ruin. Then one way or another we will find an opportunity for ourselves to personally come together with Him, from now on as true friends and followers of the Galilean and let ourselves be taught by Him. I think that this idea of mine is also worthwhile.”

[10] **Lazarus said:** “Oh certainly, but honestly, for yourselves there is little benefit to be expected. What you want to do now in the temple in favor of His cause has a good human meaning, but if you think that He, who you still call the famous Galilean, is truly the Lord Himself to whom all power and wisdom are at His disposal, it must be clear to you how silly and senseless the thought is and how foolish the imagination of a man is to, in his mortal weakness and blindness help God by means of an advice or deed. He does not need our help in eternity, but we only need help from Him.

[11] When He lets us human beings perform good things, then it only happens for our own salvation, because by that we are practicing the true and living love for God and from that to fellowman. However, the more someone has grown in his heart in the love for God and fellowman, the more ability he will receive from God to be able to love Him and fellowman more and more.

[12] But God does not need our activity for that, as we human beings need for instance the activity of our helpers and maidservants. However if we are active according to His advice and according to His teaching, this is only for our own salvation, but never for the salvation of the Lord, for He Himself is the salvation of all created beings.

[13] The fact that this matter is so and can never be otherwise, surely you yourselves are now realizing. That means if you can see and acknowledge that which I have seen and acknowledged

already a long time ago, namely that He is the Lord Himself.  
[14] However, you only consider Him as an extraordinary Man who despite His wonderful power still needs now and then the help of human beings. Then that which you want to do for Him will certainly be praiseworthy, because neighborly love commands us that we human beings will help one another with word and deed.”

## 56. THE HESITATIONS OF THE PHARISEES CONCERNING THE LORD



**Now the first speaker spoke again:** “Dear friend Lazarus, you have evaluated it very well if in full earnest this is how things are with the wonderful Galilean as you said and have faithfully described to us out of your well founded conviction. We also are mostly of the opinion that this matter is really so. However, for such an infinitely important matter it is from our side as Jews – the people of God – very necessary to set up an accurate investigation and first think very well about many things and to consider if secretly in the background this is still not a case where we finally have to look upon it in a different way instead of someone who is so totally under the impression of those wonders that his mind and senses are no more sober for it.

[2] Look, already outside it stroke me, as well as all of us, how first that well-spoken young man took as fast as lightning away our coats by his word and will, in such a way that it happened before we knew it, and we also did not know where our coats were. Then these 7 men came – according to their outer appearance they were Egyptians or Arabs – and they only had to make a sign, and to our amazement the 3 furious lions stood there. Look, these are wonders that were performed by men. Now, if that young man who also does not lack any wisdom would say about himself: ‘I am the Christ, my deed of wonder proves it to you’, would you then immediately accept him as the one he claims to be? Or if one of those 7 men would claim this about himself would you believe him? Did Moses and the further prophets – as we can read in the

Scripture – not also perform great wonders, although they were not Christ?

[3] Now the wonderful Galilean is also performing great and very remarkable wonders for everyone. Moreover, He also speaks really very wise words and says that He is Christ. Now then, the fact that He claims to be what no other performer of wonders has claimed to be, still does not prove enough that He is also really the One for who He gives Himself out before the people. On grounds of your testimony we accept and believe that this is indeed the case, but this does not take away the fact that we still have to investigate in every respect. If however we can find nowhere any apparent contradiction, then at once we will do what you have advised to us in a truly very wise and friendly way.

[4] Look, you still can have much different and exceptional proof, which we do not know yet and which have taken you to a deeper inner conviction. Now then, we are still lacking this for understandable reasons, because we ourselves have seen and heard Him – the famous Galilean – only a few times personally in the temple, and about His wonderful deeds we only have heard a lot from the mouth of other people. We personally have only witnessed very little, only of the healing of a paralytic and recently of a born-blind person. And that, friend, is now really not enough anymore. The more so because we also have seen that young man who also seems to be a Galilean and the 7 other men performing wonders by which it was made clear to us that other men are also capable to perform wonders.

[5] Concerning His wise words, also that young man spoke very wisely, as a real prophet, and our coats could not protect us against his sharp look, and so until now we still can say: deeds of wonders nor wise words and teachings are for us conclusive proofs that the Galilean is in full earnest and truth the promised Messiah of who it is written that He is Jehovah, the Lord Himself.

[6] Also you yourself gave us just now the remarkable proof that someone by means of strongly awakened discernment can know word for word and maybe still a lot more, someone's most inner

thoughts and secret speeches that he only would say to a friend in private in order not to give offense to someone else. Since already you yourself, while you are a human being like we are, possess such wonderful ability, then why could the Galilean not possess such special abilities, which every other man must consider as a wonder because the ways to acquire such an ability are totally unknown to him, and people who have such abilities do not want to teach others in this at all.

[7] In former times there were prophetic schools where only men were accepted – more precisely young men – who already since their birth were noticeable by certain special qualities. Especially an extreme good morality and, concerning the fleshly nature of man also an extreme chaste character was needed.

[8] Now then, we can see that in a morally completely unspoiled person total different qualities can be developed compared to the sick nature of a very common sensual immoral person. But for this reason, such a person who is gifted with extraordinary qualities can, compared to other people who are weak by nature, by far still not and actually never say that he is a God.

[9] I myself during my youth have seen a very simple shepherd who by his companions was called their king. This man was very moral and pious. He did not have a shepherd's staff and he only had to will and then the flock obeyed his gestures, his words and his will. I do not know if he also was capable to do other things, but why could he not give this special quality to other shepherds as common property?

[10] Therefore, for the moment my idea remains as it is, namely that in the world always a few special gifted people can exist. But that is why one should be very careful to acknowledge that person as being a God who came down from Heaven.

[11] Among the old prophets there were also great and small ones, but neither Moses nor Elijah was God. I have now told you very clearly my opinion and you can evaluate according to your own liking, as you want and as you can.”

[12] **Now Lazarus said in a very friendly tone:** “According to

earthly-human intellect you have spoken very truly and rightly, and with good reason you also could not evaluate and speak in a different way because you and your colleagues are still lacking a lot in order to fully recognize the very exalted Galilean as what He nevertheless is, despite your doubts and your ideas and objections that appear to be very intelligent.

[13] You can believe me that I also did not allow myself to be carried away by a certain enthusiasm for the wonders to acknowledge the exalted Galilean as the Messiah. Oh, very different things have brought me to this.

[14] Indeed, now you are admiring the young man, the 7 Egyptians and now also me, but I say to you that you do not know neither the young man nor the 7 Egyptians who are still very simple and unspoiled men like once the patriarchs were on the Earth, and therefore you also do not know how it was possible for me to know exactly what you have discussed behind closed doors.”

[15] **The first speaker said:** “Now then, explain this to us more clearly, then we will see if we can follow you completely in your belief.”

## 57. LAZARUS’ TESTIMONY OF THE LORD



**AZARUS said:** “Did you then not read in the Scripture: ‘When the Lord will come as a Son of Man on this Earth, the few righteous ones will see the angels coming down from Heaven and will serve Him?’ However, what will you say when I will tell you that I and many who were with me have seen that, and it was not a dream and even less some illusion, but a full, evident truth. And the young man here is an angel, and even more: an archangel.

[2] The inner spirit has shown the 7 men from the faraway Back-Egypt that with us Jews the great promise was completely fulfilled, and they went their way and came to us, led by the spirit, in order to see for themselves the Lord of all glory as a Man who deals with the people and to see Him teaching. And we are so blind that we



do not want to realize what they as people who are living faraway from here can already see in the fullest light.

[3] However, concerning my ability by which I could know what you have said behind closed doors, I never had that before, but the great, very exalted Galilean, the Lord, has given it to me as a result of my faith in Him and the love that I had for Him, and on account of Him for my many poor fellowmen.

[4] What I have told you here, is a holy truth, but I cannot assure it to you in another way than by saying to you once and for all: this is how it is and not otherwise. And that is why I believe that the very exalted Galilean is in all living truth the promised Messiah, Jehovah Zebaoth. He who believes in Him and loves Him above all and his fellowman as himself will have the true, eternal life in him.

[5] But now you can do whatever you want. Because this also is a holy statement of the Lord: even the will of the devil must be left free, because otherwise man should be no more man and the image of God. He would be an animal of which the soul would not have any freedom and could therefore only act in such a way as it is driven by God's omnipotence.

[6] Everything that you can see on Earth and at the firmament is judged and stands under the unchangeable law of 'must'. For a short time man must put up with this rigid and firm law regarding his body. Only the body of man is – as far as his form, growth and very ingenious organic structure is concerned, as well as the normal duration of the bodily life – guided by God's omnipotence, and therefore God can also heal at once any sick body by means of the power of His godly will. But as far as the free soul of man is concerned the omnipotence of God has no dealings with it. Therefore, also the rules of conduct, which God has given to the souls of men were not given to man as 'must' but as 'you shall'.

[7] Consequently, we have received the laws from God without 'must' and we can obey them if we want. Therefore, nobody is forced now to go to Him in faith, but everyone must do this freely out of himself. One should think about the consequences that this

would have for the soul in the beyond where he will remain as free as he is here now. Only with the difference that there he will have to draw everything out of himself whatever he will need for his eternal livelihood. But how will he fare there when he did not follow the advises of God and did not gather here spiritual treasures and help in himself?

[8] Just as God with His omnipotence restrains Himself here because of the fullest freedom of life of the soul, so also He will by virtue of His eternal order restrain Himself eternally. However, here on this Earth every man has the advantage for his soul that God's omnipotence has given him all kinds of treasures to make use of, and when he will use them according to God's advises he can with that acquire very great spiritual treasures for his soul for eternity. In the beyond however, a world full of treasures and food will totally disappear. There, every soul – as image of God – will have to create everything out of himself, that means: out of his own wisdom and out of his own totally free will. How will he fare when he still has never been in contact with God's will or with His wisdom and love?

[9] Where will a blind, dark and by that totally powerless soul, who is lacking all inner, spiritual treasures start and do in the beyond? When you slightly think about this you surely must realize how terribly foolish it is not to take part now in this great time of God's mercy, which is appearing here and there while one will maybe never more have such a brilliant opportunity for that in such high degree.

[10] Now I have told you everything that a friend who loves the truth can tell you, and I say to you once more, what I already have told you several times: as far as I am concerned you are not bound and you can do what you want, because your souls are equally as free as mine."

[11] **When the Pharisees heard Lazarus speak like that, the second speaker, who is – as known – a qualified scribe, said:** "The fact that friend Lazarus – who as private individual is almost as wealthy as hardly a second one in the country – cannot have any

interest when we follow up his advice, is very obvious. Because what will he care about our gold and silver, our pearls and precious stones? He has so many of them that he easily could buy a kingdom with that. Thus, he is not persuading us to believe in the Galilean so that we would step out of the temple and then would deposit our treasures in his bank of exchange with interest. Far from us to believe such thing of him since a couple of years ago he closed down his bank of exchange. But he, who is known as a skilled evaluator of all possible incidents in this world, has in no way considered this matter of the great Galilean one-sidedly and he has with his known discerning spirit found the real heart of the matter in this exceptional case. It would therefore be really the best if we simply will do what he has advised to us.

[12] Truly, in our temple there is now little that can be done. The material gain has for the greatest part as good as disappeared. However, for our souls there are in the temple only continuously greater losses but never more gain. That is why it should be very clever of us if we at our high age would finally keep ourselves informed about how things will be with our souls after our bodily death, of which certainly we will not have to wait very long. I would immediately free myself from the temple if all of you will also do that.

[13] But before that, I still would like an easy to be fulfilled condition, and that is the following: I gladly would still like to speak with the young man, which friend Lazarus has indicated just now as an archangel. Tell me, friend Lazarus, would that maybe be possible?"

[14] **Lazarus said:** "Oh, nothing is easier than that. I only have to call him, then at the same moment he will be here."

[15] **The second speaker said:** "Please friend, do this, because I am burning of desire to see and speak with this archangel-man."

## 58. RAPHAEL MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN



Once Lazarus called Raphael according to the instruction that I already gave him in the big dining-hall, and at the same moment he was already in the small dining-hall where the Pharisees were staying with Lazarus.

[2] When Raphael stood suddenly before the Pharisees they were surprised how he could be so fast at the call of Lazarus.

[3] When Raphael was standing now before the Pharisees who were greatly amazed and were searchingly staring at him with very meaningful looks, **the second speaker**, shuddering with secret deep respect said: “Tell us, mysterious young man: is it true what our friend Lazarus has told us just now?”

[4] **Raphael** said: “Why do you doubt about it? Did you before not experience yourself that a man of my age can impossibly possess my abilities? Yes, I tell you: it is exactly as Lazarus has revealed it now a little too soon to you. I am not like you an earthly man, but I truly am a messenger of the Lord. My name is Enoch. However, now I am called Raphael, because when I lived during the ancient times on this world as an earthly man in the flesh, I did not experience the death of the body, nor the prophet Elijah either. For God the Lord changed me in one moment. But the Lord did not give this grace to me alone, but also to others who loved Him above all.

[5] But you have always been full of unbelief and now even more. But such a craving of doubt is not honorable to you. If you do not believe freely, there will also not be an outer nor inner power that will force you to it, because your will must be totally free, for without the free will – just like friend Lazarus has explained it – you would be no men but entirely dull animals, like the apes in the forests of Africa.

[6] Now I say to you: he who still values and loves this transitory world and its meaningless bad offices with their pitiful admiration more than the Lord who is now bodily present among the people, and we, His Heavenly servants with Him, is with all his worldly

intelligence a big fool and is not worthy of the Lord, and His help will not be given to him. He who has recognized the Lord and does not look for Him, will also not be looked for by the Lord with His mercy.”

[7] **The second speaker, who could not delight enough in the beautiful shape of Raphael, said:** “Yes, yes, you really are an archangel. I believe now everything, and now the great desire has come in me to meet the very exalted Galilean, to kneel down before Him and to ask Him for forgiveness for all the great sins that I have committed on this world.”

[8] **Also the other 9 Pharisees and scribes said the same.**

[9] **And Raphael said:** “All right, then you can return to the temple in the morning. If your colleagues – who are now almost without exception malicious – and dark people will ask you what you have come to know, then answer: ‘We have searched diligently and have heard useful things. But for our own salvation we find it necessary to continue this investigation in order to come to know everything and be able to relate it as good as possible. Therefore, also today we will continue the investigation and only appear before the counsel when we have heard everything.’

[10] When you will say that, they will gladly let you go. Then come to Bethany, and do not worry about anything anymore. Because all the rest will be taken care of according to the almighty will of the Lord. However, do not say anything about all the other things that you have heard here. Do as I have told you now.”

[11] **Then Raphael disappeared, and also Lazarus said goodbye to the temple servants.**

[12] **The temple servants discussed until after midnight with one another about what they had experienced and heard, and were sleeping on the good resting chairs.**

## 59. THE LORD COMMENDS LAZARUS



SAID however to Lazarus who came back to us again: “My son, My friend and My brother. You have accomplished your present task to My greatest satisfaction, because now the last of the still clear thinking temple servants are won, and that is good for My case, because the high counsel rested mainly on those who are now won. For they have knowledge and experience and they are fluent in speech. Those who are still dwelling and ruling now in the temple – even if there are still a great number – are totally blind, dumb and evil.

[2] But these who are now won should nevertheless stay with the temple, just as our Nicodemus and Joseph of Arimathea. For if they would completely leave the temple the others would start to rage and to yell full of bitter dissatisfaction to such extend that the Romans would have to take up the arms before the right time and bring the people and the land to ruin. However, if these elders will stay, then they can still prevent many things in our favor and moderate the fury of the others. But still, it is good that by a clever pretext they would come to Bethany tomorrow and that their considerable earthly treasures would go into the safe of Lazarus, because by that the 10 men are no more bound to the temple and will be free to go whenever they want and to stay away as long as they want, while they still will remain members of the temple, and so their place will not be taken by evil hypocrites.

[3] The reason that they will give as to why they will stay for a longer time away from the counsel and the temple is very good, because the temple servants who have put all their evil trust in these ten, think that they will go out to catch Me somewhere. But in this they will be greatly mistaken. The ten will indeed go out to make a closer investigation about Me, however not in favor of the temple, but in favor of their souls.

[4] For this reason, today was a last and good capture out of the temple, because the ten were still the last green twigs at the old, already totally withered and stone-dead tree of the temple. When

they will be put to a young and fresh trunk as still useable grafts, then before long they still can bring forth a lot of good fruits.

[5] One thing I still want to do for them today, and this will consist of the fact that all ten of them will have a very memorable dream. This will give them tomorrow and still a long time after that many subjects for discussion and will bring them to reflection. What this dream is all about, they will tell you with all their eloquence tomorrow in Bethany.

[6] Now however, we will start our evening meal, because first I had to tell you word for word what happened outside with the temple servants and what had been discussed. And thus, My friend Lazarus, you can order to serve good bread and still more good wine on the table for the well-prepared fishes. Because during this night, which will be for all of you a very memorable one, we will not spend our time with sleeping but will stay awake and by that we will still experience a lot of things. Therefore friend, do now as I have told you.”

[7] Then Lazarus went immediately with Raphael outside, and in a few moments everything had been excellently taken care of. We ate and drunk now very cheerfully and discussed many things that were beneficial for the people, and also what the Pharisees had discussed among themselves and about what they agreed upon.

[8] More in particular the Romans, Nicodemus and Joseph of Arimathea took great pleasure in the fact that the 10 worst Pharisees, who always in an inflexible way went to war against Me in the high counsel, had been willing now to bring themselves to other ideas.

[9] I said: “Indeed, by that a great victory was fought for the good cause of life, but Hell is therefore still continuously extremely active, and the prince of the lie and darkness is now more active than before to bring the seed of the new life out of Me to ruin. And before from now on 1 year will have passed, you will already clearly see the evil fruits of his activities.”

## 60. ABOUT MATTER AND THE DANGER OF IT



**OW Agricola** who was slightly excited said: “But Lord and Master, You are really infinitely wise and are filled with an almighty will. And also, countless legions of the mightiest angels – like Raphael is one of them – are at Your disposal. Also we Romans want to battle for the success of the good cause against the might of all devils, and with heart and mouth we want to say: ‘Rather the whole Earth will fall into pieces than that even one dash would be destroyed of the truth and justice of what Your teaching has announced to us.’

[2] You alone are however more than almighty enough and do not need the countless many angels and even less our Roman armies. Then it must be for You very easy to secretly unlearn forever the evil practices of the prince of the lie and darkness who is working against You. What are we doing with a totally incorrigible criminal? As a justly punishment we throw him in a so-called eternal prison, or we bring him to death according to the law. For a man, who once has become a perfect devil can better disappear from the Earth instead of continuing to live unto great disaster for the other better fellowmen. Please, o Lord and Master, do also likewise with the prince of the lie and the evil darkness of life, then rest and order and truth, love and justice on Earth will prevail among the people.”

[3] **I** said: “You easily can say that because until now you still do not understand and realize what has to be understood by Hell and the prince of the lie and darkness.

[4] You are right when you say that I have the power to destroy Hell and its prince with all his devils, but if I would do that then you will have no more Earth under your feet, no sun, no moon and also no stars. Because the whole material creation is a continuous judgment according to the immovable order of My will and My wisdom. This must be and must exist, so that the souls of men can acquire on the hard soil of judgment the freedom and the full independence of the eternal indestructible life.



[5] If I would follow your advice and would dissolve the whole material creation, then I also will have to destroy the bodies of all men. However, the body is a necessary instrument of the soul, and only with the help of this instrument can the soul – according to My highest wisdom and deepest insight – fight and acquire eternal life.

[6] However, although the body is absolutely necessary for the soul to receive eternal life, it can however also easily be the greatest disaster for the soul, because when he will allow himself to be blinded by the necessary prickles of his flesh, give in to it and with all his love and his whole thinking and will would completely surrender to it, then he will come under the judgment of his own prince of the lie and darkness out of which it will be very difficult to be saved.

[7] And look, what your body is for your soul, that is the Earth for the whole human race. He who will allow himself to be overly blinded and to be captured by the glittering of his treasures, he also will come by his own free will in the judgment and the material death of it, out of which it will still be much more difficult to be freed.

[8] However, precisely because men are now capable to draw more and more precious treasures from the Earth to acquire by that the greatest possible prosperity, pleasantness and sensuality, they have strongly intensified the activity of the prince of Hell, which is in itself the eternal judgment and consequently the death of matter and together with that the death of those souls who allowed themselves to be taken prison by the earlier mentioned reasons.

[9] With what kind of almightiness and wisdom can you fight against it if you want it to be effective for eternity? I say to you and to you all: with nothing else except with the truth that I have taught you and with the power of extreme self-denial and the true and full humility of the heart.

[10] Strive only for that which you recognize as truth, and then act according to it and not out of appearance for some worldly reason like the temple servants and also many gentiles are doing. Then by

that, you will have conquered in yourself the complete Hell and its prince. All evil spirits that are present in all matter will not be able to harm you anymore. And even if an endless great number from the whole great Man of Creation would attack you, then they nevertheless will have to flee away from you as loose chaff and as desert sand for the mighty storm.

[11] But if the treasures of the Earth are holding you captive, so that you in order to possess them, would also deny the recognized truth, then you are already conquered in your soul by the power of Hell and its prince who carries the name of lie and darkness, judgment, destruction and death.

[12] Look at our 7 Egyptians. They know all the great treasures that are hidden in the interior of the Earth, and would also be able to make them useful in great quantity. But they are despising them and prefer to live very simple and are only searching for the treasures for the spirit. That is why they still have kept the true, primitive qualities of men by which they are true rulers and commanders over the whole nature, which certainly would not be the case if they ever had allowed themselves to be captured by the enticements of the nature.

[13] When a father of a family and master of the house wants to keep the right and good order in his house, then he must not be familiar with his personnel and always give in to their weaknesses of all kind. Because if he will do that, he will become a prisoner of his unreliable domestic staff, and when he would say then to one of them: “do this’ or ‘do that’, will the servants, who have received power over him, still obey him? Oh no, they will only mock and laugh at him.

[14] The same would be the case with a general who would make himself subordinate to his soldiers who can only receive their power and courage from their general. If the enemy would come and he would command the soldiers to attack and defeat the threatening enemy, would the soldiers obey the weakened general? Oh no, they would struggle back and say: ‘How do you weakling want to command us? You never had the courage and the will to

let us seriously practice the use of the weapons and you only trifled with us as playmates. How can you now command us against the enemy? You have never been our master but we were yours. How can you now suddenly try to be our boss when we were your master since the beginning?’

[15] Look, this will happen to everyone who will not from the very first beginning strictly be exhorted by his parents and teachers to deny himself in all possible fleshly desires, so that they would not become lord and master over his soul. Because once these will have power over the person, then he will have a tough job in the future to command all those desires and temptations of his flesh, for they became weak and indulgent and unstable in his weak flesh.

[16] However, if a soul will be guided and trained already since his youth according to the truth of the clear mind, in such a way that he will have his flesh more and more under control and then will not allow it more than what it is due from nature according to My order, then self-evidently such a soul will also become indifferent for the whole world with all its treasures and its other temptations. And therefore, the soul who has in this way been purified in the spirit to become strong, is then also not only lord over the desires of his body but also lord over the whole nature of the world and consequently also lord over the entire Hell and its prince of the lie and darkness.

[17] Now you know who and what Hell and the prince of the lie and the darkness in fact are and how they can be battled and how they certainly can be conquered. Therefore, act likewise, then you – men on this Earth – will soon and easy have completely destroyed its kingdom, and you will be true lords over the whole Earth and its nature as well as over your own nature.”

## 61. THE IDEAS OF AGRICOLA ABOUT THE FUTURE OF THE TEACHING OF THE LORD



**N this, Agricola said:** “Lord and Master. You have revealed to me again a new and extremely important truth, and I can clearly see that it has to be like that. But how is the situation with the education of man from his childhood on? One does not even know how and where he has to start and end with the education of children.

[2] For instance, rich parents have a child. They have a true ape-love for it and allow it everything whatever they are reading in its eyes, and they pamper it often in an intolerable way. They do not dare to punish such a child themselves for its many wrongdoings. Not even with a few serious words. And if later a teacher would perhaps do that, then he has made the child and the parents as his enemies and persecutors. Already the old Romans said: ‘He who is hated by the gods will be made a teacher by them’. Well then, the parents are blind fools, and the teacher must be foolish if he wants to live. Then how can children receive a proper education?

[3] With a kind of education as is generally the case now in the world of the great lords, every person and the whole human race must become so powerless that there is no way to know how the real true human being must look like and how he must be. And I must openly declare that on this Earth still a lot of storms have to blow over the fields and seas before humanity will return to the great and true situation from which it came forth in the very beginning.

[4] Good schools should be set up, not only for children but also for the blind parents, in which they all should learn the great truths that everybody must know in order to act according to it and so to become a true human being.

[5] But from where can we have the right teachers for so many people? You, Lord and Master, have indeed formed a large group of disciples who know what is needed to become a true human being according to Your order, but what is their number compared

to the nearly endless great number of people on the whole Earth? And on top of it, there is the entire degeneration of people and nations on Earth and the hardness with which they are rooted in their morals and habits, and also their different languages.

[6] How then can man fight against all these enormous obstructions and how can he overcome them? Surely You are the Lord Himself and everything obeys Your will, and nevertheless You Yourself are bumping here in these civilized countries against insurmountable obstacles. Then against which obstacles will the few disciples bump?

[7] Yes, it would be good if we could lay Your godly teaching in one night in the heart of all the people, together with the zeal to act accordingly. But this is not Your intention because every human being must make it as its own, only by the teaching from outside. And further he must take up the serious will to act accordingly. But in this way, mankind will surely progress very slowly, and it is totally unpredictable how long it will take until all men on Earth will know Your teaching. And thus, Your teaching will always be the property of only a few people, and one can even ask himself how long all this will remain pure.

[8] Because as long as the people will not be fully absorbed by the truth of Your teaching, they will besides that still hold on to their worldly pleasures, be it more or less, which is actually the same. By means of many additions they soon will make of Your teaching an earthly source of income, and then it will look in no way better with Your later disciples than now with the many Jews and gentiles. And the true blessing and the living fruit of Your teaching will be far away from the people. Although I am not a prophet, but it is my rather clear ability to evaluate things, which I have received thanks to my many experiences, and I believe that in this matter I have spoken out a true evaluation.”

## 62. THE SPEECH OF THE LORD ABOUT THE FUTURE OF HIS TEACHING



WHEN I said: “This you surely have. And I know also that for the greater part it will happen this way. But nevertheless, on the whole it does not matter, because there are still a very large number of schoolhouses in My creation. He who will not learn it in Jerusalem, will be taught elsewhere.

[2] Yes I know and can see how a great number of false teachers will arise after Me, saying to the people: ‘Look, here is Christ’ or ‘There He is’. But I am saying now to all of you, and tell it to your fellowmen and children, that one should not believe such false teachers, for they will easily be recognized by their works.

[3] How a real disciple of Me should be according to My word, you have heard yesterday in Emmaus on the mountain of Nicodemus when I sent out 70 disciples to spread My teaching.

[4] So when you will meet teachers who will spread the coming of the Kingdom of God among the people in this manner according to My will, you and everyone can consider them as real and complete true teachers. However, when teachers – although in My name – want to make money out of My teaching, and their purpose is money and other treasures, then consider them as false and as never being called by Me to be spreaders of My teaching. Because My true disciples and spreaders of My pure teaching will always be poor in earthly matters, just like Me, but therefore they will be more than rich from a spiritual point of view. For they will not need to acquire My teaching and My word through time consuming learning of a predecessor, but I will put My teaching and My will in their heart and in their mouth.

[5] However, the false disciples will by the long studying of their also false doctrines have to acquire all kinds of texts, words and proverbs and will only then when they have learned everything tiredly from their puffed up and talkative teachers and leaders be ordained as disciples through all kinds of empty and blind ceremonies, as this is now also happening in the temple with the

Pharisees, scribes and elders and also with you, gentiles, where the rank of priests is forming a real social class that continues from father to son and in which someone from the people is only accepted when one or the other priest has no children, and even then, only as a child that can only later on be educated as priest.

[6] So, how a true teacher and spreader of My pure teaching can be distinguished from a false one, this I have now clearly explained to you all, and thus everyone will easily be able to guard himself against the false teachers and prophets. However, him who will follow and believe them, honor them and also help them in everything, he can only blame himself when later he will be devoured by them.

[7] Yes, it even will happen that false prophets will exalt themselves on golden thrones and persecute as soon as possible the true ones that are chosen and called by Me. However, when this will happen, then also their judgment and their end will come over them, and My teaching will despite that continue to exist among the people on Earth. But it will only shine, radiate and comfort in quietness as a free possession among the people, but never as a ruler who is commanding entire nations on a ruler throne with crown, staff and scepter.

[8] Where this will be the case in My name, it will be difficult to find Me, and instead of My love there will be greed, avarice, envy and persecution of all kind among the people, and one deceit will extend the hand to the other. When you will see such fruits among the people, you surely will perceive what kind of mentality those prophets have who are ruling on thrones and from whom their false teachings are originating.

[9] If however, you always will be able to receive what is right and true – providing you have a desire for it – will you turn your heart to that which is false? And so, now you know that despite all false prophets and teachers who will arise later, My pure teaching will continue in quietness and without pompous display until the end of times among the people.

[10] The fact that this teaching of Mine will only spread slowly

among the people of the Earth, of that I already have clearly shown you the reasons more than once, because I surely know the best when a people is ripe to accept My teaching.

[11] However, the things that could happen in all the somewhat ripe places on Earth for a fast spreading of My teaching, that has also happened and soon a lot more will be happening. And for this reason we can now put this subject at rest without further remarks, for we still have much more important things to discuss.”

[12] Now **Agricola** said again: “This will undoubtedly be so, because You alone know best all things that have to happen on this miserable Earth. But anyone of us who cannot look into the future and to whom You have only given that which is needed to go through his earthly life as good as possible as test of his free will according to Your teaching, and who moreover still sees a lot of obstacles on the way of the light, will despite everything be filled with so much worry that he will ask himself: ‘What will finally be the result of all that?’

[13] Will Your teaching that is so holy pure come now to all people, and when? Or will it always be an exclusive possession of a few chosen ones? According to the words that were now spoken by You, the latter seems to be the case. Well yes, all right, because whatever is right for You, o Lord and Master, that must also be right for us human beings, since we cannot change it without You. But because it pleased You to give us human beings, Your created beings, in addition to a free will also an equally free reason, You also have given us by that a free discernment, and therefore I have spoken as I have spoken.

[14] But I have understood from Your reply that You still have very extraordinary plans and purposes for the people, otherwise You would not permit that in addition to the pure teaching that You have given now and in addition to Your good instructed disciples there will still rise other false ones, and the people will again be misled and fall into a godless darkness. This way, I cannot speak further and I will apply myself now completely to listening.”



[15] **I** said: “Friend, you will do good by that. As long as one knows much too little the right reason for it, it is better to listen than to preach.

[16] **Believe Me:** to create worlds is easy, but to bring free people to life and let them perfect themselves by which the godly almightiness by virtue of the order of its love and wisdom, has to be silent and watch, that is finally also for Me a matter which is not easy. Therefore, only My limitless patience and immense tolerance can help Me.

[17] For this reason, by their very own belief and deeds, people have to be put in all kinds of good and bad situations, so that then by the consequences of their belief and deeds they will become sensible and will finally, out of their own will search for the right light.

[18] Like all the creatures on this Earth are developing themselves materially between day and night and between summer and winter, so is also man doing the same spiritually.

[19] When the first men on this Earth were spiritually walking in the clear daylight, then finally the light simply became a burden to them. When later however, the spiritual night made its appearance with them, only then they started to understand the value of the spiritual day and valued it, and the better ones begun to search scrupulously for the lost paradise.

[20] Then it was given to a few to find the spiritual day again, and many ran to the happy ones who found the spiritual day again and let themselves be guided to the light. But also many, blinded by the world did not understand what a spiritual day is and remained in their night, which was compelled by their own laziness. These could then also not benefit of the happiness of a spiritual day and were in great need. That need was however a good guard for the happy ones, because they could well notice which fruits that man had picked of his spiritual night.

[21] **Look,** this is how it happens, that besides the enlightened ones there always will be those who are not enlightened and will multiply. But therefore, the enlightened ones will never lack on

this Earth, and they always will be given the opportunity to enlighten with their true light of life those who are not enlightened, and the reward of the enlightened ones who will do that in My name will later be great in My Kingdom.

[22] To be enlightened by My grace is a great and invaluable bliss for man. But it is a 1,000 times more valuable to enlighten with his light of life also others who walk in darkness. That means, if they will accept the light. But this must always be said to all of you again and again: that you should not throw the pearls of My teaching to the swine of men. Because a person who has once become a real swine, will also stay a swine. For even if such a person on a good moment will listen with pleasure to a true and good word and will also pick it up, then he still, at the next opportunity will go back to his old pool and jump with pleasure in it, and will still remain a swine. Thus, to such people no gospel should be preached. And for such people I have another gospel that their own nature will proclaim in much pain, wailing and gnashing of teeth.

[23] And now, we also have discussed an important subject and we can now, being comforted, move over to something much different. Who of you still doubts about one thing or another, let him rise and speak, because I want that tomorrow you will be well enlightened to leave with Me the Mountain of Olives. Therefore, each one of you is free to speak, as his reason will inspire him.”

[24] Then **most of them** said: “Lord, we do not doubt anymore and we are very happy with that.”

### 63. ABOUT THE DENSITY OF THE POPULATION OF THE EARTH. THE DIFFICULTIES WITH OLD AGE.

**B**UT **one of the Indian magicians**, who was still with us said: “Great Lord and Master, I still have a lot of things of which a brighter light would not harm me. If I thus would ask you something, would You find me worthy to give me an answer?”

[2] **I** said: “You are as well a human being as any other, and this is sufficient. Do ask whatever you want, then I will answer you.”

[3] Then **the magician** thought about it for awhile if ever the question would perhaps not be too stupid and common, but he quickly pulled himself together and said: “Lord, there is something that, which according to my experiences that I have acquired on this Earth I do not find right for the survival of men. If You will not change that and improve it in one way or another, then in the course of time the survival of men will surely be in trouble.

[4] Look, men and animals are multiplying day by day and they also need more and more food, but the soil of the Earth is never extended or enlarged. When this will continue for a couple of 1,000 years the survival of men will certainly give problems. What do You say, o Lord, about this opinion of mine?”

[5] **I** said: “My dear friend, you could have spared yourself entirely this worry, because how many people can live on the now habitable part of the Earth, is already calculated very well by Me since eternal times. When the Earth – the area that has been dried up until this day to accommodate the people – will continue to exist another ten thousand years, and the human race would double or triple every year, then on this Earth ten times as many people as there are now will still very well be able to survive. And when in course of time there would indeed be so many people that the present big, dried up soil of the Earth would not be able to feed them anymore, well then we still have a lot of possibilities in store to rise up in one moment whole continents out of the sea in order

to still feed another 100,000 times as many people as there are now living on the Earth. So, about this subject that is giving you so much worries, you can be completely at ease.

[6] On this Earth there are living now such a great number of people that you do not know any figure that would be big enough to describe it, and still there are on Earth so many big pieces of uninhabited land that a 1,000 years would hardly be enough to travel through and view them. And still, certain rich people possess great pieces of land for themselves that are really more than a 100 times bigger than what they need for their food. If you assume that in due time the soil of the Earth will be divided somewhat more equally, then all the people – even if they would be 100 times more than now – will still have enough food and find a shelter for their body, and certainly when they will live according to My teaching. Are you now satisfied with this explanation?”

[7] **The magician said:** “Lord and Master, entirely, and my heart is feeling lighter now. But I still have something else, about which I still would like to receive a little more light from You than what I was able to acquire so far in Your very exalted company. It is true that there was already a discussion about that, and from Your mouth there were also explanations that gave me much light. But there is something that has still remained dark for me. Now that I, together with my companions am staying by the source of the light, I would like to be enlightened a little more in everything that is still dark for me.

[8] Look, Lord and Master, the existence and the life of a human being is really great and lovely. He is begotten, born, and from that moment on raised by his parents to become a human being who can think, speak and act according to the ideas that were conveyed through education and that he has discovered himself as a thinking human being by means of his thinking-faculty and by his reason that was formed by way of experience.

[9] Then, when a person of good will has brought his spiritual strength to a for him as high as possible level through great effort and often bitter experiences, his physical and also his spiritual

strength is decreasing. The body becomes tired, old and feeble, gets sick and consequently dies mostly in great pain and in great fright and fear for death.

[10] Now I know indeed from Your mouth that death for human beings is nothing to be frightened of, and would also be completely painless if they would have stayed in the order that was revealed to them and if they would have lived and acted accordingly. However, now it is for the people, who are without fault, very regrettable that so many of them can impossibly know anything of the order for the human life that was revealed during ancient times, and are therefore forced to live in a totally opposite order that arose without their fault. Nevertheless, they must just as well bear the bad consequences of it as if they would have deserved it by their fault. Well now, honestly speaking, I consider this a strange arrangement from Your part in the mechanism of the human body.

[11] It is a very good law that he who kills a human being will also be punished by death as a warning example for others who in their evil lusts are maybe also hindered by someone. But a law by which for instance when someone has fallen of the roof and by his fall would kill another human being, is punished by death, would be the greatest unrighteousness that exists in the world. And look, according to me this seems to be precisely the same as the godly arrangement that was mentioned just now in relation to the diseases and the very painful bodily death of most people. By that, they are enduring a punishment, which they in fact have never deserved by their fault. This You could arrange a little different in the future.

[12] Although, it were precisely the Indians who often during many years have endured the greatest pains, because our religious doctrine tells them that God is having His greatest pleasure in those who firmly endure the worst pains with the greatest patience. But by seeing such often very cruel suffering and such pain, the mind of a friend of mankind who inwardly is objective and free from prejudice resists it and asks the Creator of Earth and men: 'Almighty and wise God, can You actually feel pleasure in the

unnamable tormenting and pain of Your created beings? If the people are infatuated in their thinking and mind, You must have enough means to enlighten them again, just like You have enlightened the first created human beings of this Earth.

[13] Why do You allow that thousands of mankind must first live during thousands of years in the most bitter tormenting before there is only a little spark of Your light that is spreading among them?

[14] Look Lord, this is a very important question from us, very troubled people, to You, the Lord and Creator of Earth and human beings. Give us a true light about this.”

#### 64. ABOUT THE REINCARNATION OF THE INHABITANTS OF THE STARS



SAID: “Friend, a couple of days ago I have given you a clear light about this subject. If you did not completely understand it, I really cannot do anything about it. Look up to the stars. I tell you that these are all great worlds where also people are living, just like here.

[2] Many of the countless people on those stars know by their angels that a soul can only attain to the true childhood of God on this Earth, but only by means of a heavy and difficult life in the flesh. When they want, they will be allowed that their souls will also be begotten in the flesh on this Earth. Once they are here, they also have to accept that for a short time they have to go through it, because by that they will reach forever the triumph of the full equality with God, and therefore they can also submit to a few things, since I also, voluntarily, out of love for My children have submitted to a lot of things, and also will have to submit to something very big and bitter for the salvation of My children.

[3] God’s Kingdom can only be obtained by force and great sacrifices. Remember this well, and also that which I have already said about it. Did you understand this well?”

[4] Then **the magician** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, I have well

understood this now and I also remember now again what You have said about this subject a couple of days ago. I thank You for everything for what we have now gained at Your holy side for the eternal salvation of our soul. When suffering and pain will afflict our body, we will bear it with all patience out of love for You, for also we cannot know now for what other reason that we are placed on this Earth in the flesh, except that we have to, we want to, and we also will search for God, acknowledge Him and furthermore love Him above all, no matter how bitter the circumstances may be.

[5] For it seems to me that exactly those who are closest to Your heart whom You always are trying the most, compared to those who by their different acts are more distant from Your heart. Because on our trips through all regions of the Earth I have many times met people who did not believe in any god and they treated their fellowmen often worse than wild animals while they themselves had an indestructible health and were guzzling in a life of pleasure. And moreover, they finally died a painless death that was fast as lightning.

[6] On the other hand I met elsewhere very pious, good people who were devoted to God and were often living in the greatest misery that they were patiently enduring, which was putting my belief in the loving care of a good and extraordinary wise God and His existence in a doubtful light.

[7] Now, such doubts have entirely disappeared with us, and we know and realize now where we stand and in which circumstances the people on this Earth must live their life for the trial of the free will. But emotionally I still must confess that this life of the trial of freedom is a tough assignment for the people, even if after fulfilling it, they can reach the greatest and eternal benefit of life.

[8] We as human beings could before our existence never have wanted to exist, but only You could want that, and so we are Your work and You take care that they can become fully that for which reason You have created and destined them.

[9] Because this is so and not otherwise, and You have clearly

shown us the ways that we have to walk. So we want to go for that goal which You have placed before us. And with determination and with the greatest possible patience and with dedication to Your will we will walk over the thorns that are in our way here and there. This is now the firm and serious resolution of mine and also of my companions. You however, who we now recognize as our Lord of life, ask You not to bring too heavy tests and trials over us at the moment that we are separating from this world, and also to be merciful and charitable for all other people according to the merit of their lives.”

[10] **I** said: “That for which you will ask the Father in My name, will also be given to you. For only the Father is good and has no pleasure in the suffering of people, but He also does not prevent that such things come over the people if they out of sheer love for the world forget the Father, do not have faith and direct themselves in that which must give them all kinds of misfortune.

[11] Walk continuously on the ways that I have truly shown to you now, then you only will have little to suffer and your departure from this world will be easy.


[12] Only those who by all kinds of attachments to this world have buried their soul too much in the flesh must finally mostly suffer bitterly, because such a soul must be detached from it with great force so that he would not completely go to ruin in his flesh, and this must then also produce heavy pains in the body. And this is then also good for the soul because through the pains and the suffering he will be purified of his fleshly lusts, and by that he will be able to make an easier progress and advance more surely in the beyond on the way of spiritual life.

[13] However, people who are strongly attached to the world, who do not believe in a God, who moreover are enjoying a healthy life at a high age and finally are also dying a quick and painless death, have already received the reward of their life in this world, and in the beyond they hardly can expect any reward. Among such people there will be outer darkness and among them there will be much wailing and gnashing of teeth.”



[14] **The magician said:** “Lord and Master, when such people, who mostly are gentiles, cannot help it when they never have heard anything about a true God and therefore could also not believe in it, then a very terrifying survival of their soul in the beyond seems to be a too heavy punishment. Yes, people like us now who have come to know God and must believe in Him because He is visibly existing before them and teaches them the ways of life Himself – when despite that they would become unfaithful and would do what is evil, then they surely would deserve such a horrible fate in the beyond as You have described to us now. But people who cannot help it when they were more animal than human being in the world, I would like to consider as unaccountable, and a punishment in the beyond for their committed evil deeds does not seem to me in accordance with the godly order and the love that is rising from God’s justice. Because when someone on this Earth does not know a God and consequently does also not know His will, and who has no other law except that which is prescribed by his nature and his passions, he can with respect to God’s will commit no sin and be punished for it. Lord and Master, look, also this is still a dark corner in my soul, that You very merciful would maybe like to enlighten a little.”

## **65. THE TREATMENT OF THE PEOPLE ON THIS SIDE AND IN THE BEYOND**

 **SAID:** “Also concerning this point, the things that are right and completely suitable have already been said, and you also have partially heard it from My disciples. However, you cannot so well remember it and in some corners of your life it has again become a little obscure. But if you will live according to My word you will receive the baptism with the Spirit which is the true, inner rebirth of the Spirit in your soul. This living Spirit of all light and all truth will then guide you into all the light and all truth, and then everything will become clear in you, which is now obscure and dark.

[2] God's love and wisdom can also see – and certainly even more clearly – that which your more enlightened reason can already tell you, namely that one cannot punish someone to whom no law has been given which he should obey. And it certainly would be unrighteous and unfair if God would ordain this.

[3] But there exists now nowhere on the Earth a nation that is totally without any law. Because God has awakened wise men among all the nations according to their needs, and these have given them laws and have also told and showed to them that there is a God who has created everything and also sustains, guides and rules everything. These wise men have also taught the people that God will reward – here and in the beyond – those who obey the laws, but will chastise and relentlessly punish those who live contrary to the law, already here and certainly in the beyond, because the soul of men after the death of the body continues to live in another world of spirits and will be judged according to his acts.

[4] Look, every nation has received such a teaching, and when they will forget it, they soon will be reminded of it, partially by newly awakened wise men and partially by the individual conscience. And so, nobody who has reason and common spiritual faculties can excuse himself totally when he acts in contradiction with the laws that are known to him. And when someone in the beyond comes into the condition of his love and his free will, he also will not be able to say to God that He has treated this one or that one unjustly, because to the one who wills it himself, no injustice can be done.

[5] Over there, every soul will receive what he wants. If it is something bad, then beforehand it will be made clear to him what kind of consequences are attached to it. If he will listen to that, then he can easily be helped. However, if he does not mind it, then without hindrance it will be allowed that he will have everything as such and will enjoy that which he wants from his love.

[6] However, love – be it of a good or a bad kind – is the actual life of the soul of every human being, angel and devil. If we take

away the love from the soul, then we also take away the life and the existence. This can however not happen in God's pure order, because if only the smallest atom in creation could be destroyed and would lose its life completely and forever, then God Himself would lose an atom from His existence, which however is impossible.

[7] And in such a way a soul can never entirely lose his existence, but by his free will he can become very unhappy and wretched, and he can, if he seriously wants it, also become again by his free will happy and completely blessed.

[8] Now how can the subsistence and the situations for the soul be arranged in a more different and better and more justly ordered way than this? Do you understand this now, and is the dark corner in you now already a little lighter?"

[9] **The magician** said: "Lord and Master of all life, it is now already a lot clearer. Yes, if things are like that and also must be like that, not even the smallest of objections can be made anymore by us people against You, and I am ready with the asking of questions."

[10] **I** said: "For the moment you will do well with that. But it will happen again, that you will still ask a lot. But now it is time to proceed to something else. Who of you still wants to know something can now come forward and speak and ask, for today the gate of Heaven stands wide open for all of you."

## 66. THE GATE OF HEAVEN AND THE KINGDOM OF GOD



**A**FTER I said that, **one of the Pharisees who was won** came forward and said: "Lord and Master, since You have now said that the gate of Heaven stands wide open for all of us, would it then not be possible that we all could see with our eyes the opened gate of Heaven so that we somehow could form an idea of how Heaven looks like from the inside? Because through the opened gate we surely will be able to see a small part of it."

[2] **I** said: “How long will I have to be with you and suffer your materialistic attitude? For who is the gate to the true Kingdom of Heaven? I am the gate, the way and Heaven Myself. He who listens to Me, believes in Me, and loves the Father in Me above all, will walk through the right gate of all life the light way to the Kingdom of the Heavens that is created spiritually out of My pure love in the lightest and most living form out of My wisdom.

[3] Do not look up or down with your fleshly eyes if you want to perceive the true sight and the nature of Heaven which is the Kingdom of God, but direct the eyes of your mind at your inner awareness of love. There you will see Heaven, even everywhere, no matter in which place you will be in My creations, be it on this Earth or on another, this does not matter, because the view of Heaven will form itself out of the foundation of your life, just like it is formed by My word and by your good works. Only by means of your own Heaven will you be able to come in My eternal and infinite great Heaven.

[4] Remember this well, all of you: God’s Kingdom will not display any outer splendor and will also not come to you in an outer image and form, but it is in your deepest inner being and exists in the spirit of pure love for God and for fellowman and in the truth of the resulting life of the soul. For he who does not have or is aware of any love for God or fellowman in himself does also not have life in himself and no resurrection, which is Heaven in man, and consequently also no life within, but only the judgment and the resulting eternal death, instead of the only true and perfect life in Heaven.

[5] In a certain way the souls of the evil ones continue also to live after death, but they are only apparently alive, just like all matter and just like the life of certain animals who sleep during the whole long winter in a subterranean hole and who are totally passive.

[6] If you look at this now a little closer, you hopefully will not say to Me anymore: ‘Lord, show us the gate of Heaven and by that also a little of Heaven itself, or show us also Hell, so that we, being warned by its sight can restrain ourselves more easily from all

sins.’ He who asks that, I will have to call a fool. Every human being has either Heaven or in the worst case, Hell completely in him and can view everything in himself.

[7] However, he who carries Hell in himself, is deaf and blind in his mind. Only now and then will his conscience remember him, otherwise he would not be aware of Hell in himself, for a soul who has become infernal is already as good as completely dead by the judgment of all his matter.

[8] But a soul who by his good works according to My will, carries Heaven in him, can also view in himself Heaven on a clear daylight, and from time to time also during the night in clear visions. For visions are given to man to have a certain communion with the world of the spirits, with the lower ones as well as with the higher ones, according to how much or how little of the true Heaven that the soul has build and in fact has created by his good works according to God’s will.

[9] Thus, walk according to My commandments, then you will easily and quickly be aware of the nature of Heaven in yourself. Did all of you also understand this very well?”

[10] **The Jews, Romans, Egyptians and Indians** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, and we thank You from the deepest of our heart for Your teaching to us, who are still very blind and deaf, despite that You have given us so much and such a great light. Therefore, we also ask You to have patience with our still great weaknesses. But we will from now on surely do our best, so that Your holy light that has been given to us will shine increasingly brighter in us.”

## 67. THE POWERLESSNESS OF MAN



SAID: “No matter what you do, do it always in My name, for without Me you do not have the power to do anything for the salvation of your souls. And when you finally have done everything that has been commanded and advised to attain to the true, eternal life, then say and acknowledge in yourself and also to the world that you have been lazy and useless helpers. For only

God is everything in all and accomplishes all the good in man.

[2] When a man discerns God's will and follows it, he does not act according to his own will, but according to the will of God. Whatever God's will does in man or in a pure angel, is certainly not a work that is purely of man or of an angel, but the work of the One according to whose will a work was accomplished.

[3] By this, the work of man is only that he, out of love and true awe for God has made with his free will the recognized will of God completely as his own and acts then for his own salvation. But from that moment on it is no more the will of man but the will of God that accomplishes all the good in man, and so the good in man is then also only God's work, which real and true man has to recognize in his rightly humility. If however, a person attributes a good work to himself as his own merit, then by that he already shows that he does not know himself and has certainly never known God in truth, and therefore he is still far away from the Kingdom of God.

[4] For this reason, give always in everything the honor to God and act always in His name, then you will have God's love in you. And he who has God's love in him has forever and always everything in him.

[5] But remember also the following: when man does something bad against the will of God, that deed is not a work of God, but entirely a deed of man himself, because in that case man did not make his will subordinate to God's will that he knows, but is only continuously working against it. And of him can rightly be said that his evil deeds are completely his own deeds. But precisely by that, man has by the coarse use of his free will judged himself and by that he has in his blindness made himself unhappy.

[6] Look, with these spiritual things it is more or less the same as with a wise general and his subordinate soldiers. The soldiers must indeed go with many thousands into the hot and bloody battle, but no one of them may fight differently than only according to the plan and the will of the general. He who acts like this will fight a successful battle. However if one of the many soldiers thinks by

himself: ‘Ha, I have courage, might and also the right insight myself. I will go into battle on my own and acquire a crown for my own head’ and would draw out of the order of battle of his general, would be as good as lost because he soon will be captured by the enemy and will be treated very severely. And whose fault is that? Of nobody else except of himself. Why did he not make the will of the wise general forever as his own? Then he easily would have conquered the enemy together with the others. Since he wanted to be a general at the same time as a soldier, he easily became a prey of the enemies.

[7] I however, am also a general over life – even the One and only – against everything that is hostile against life. He who will fight under My commandments and according to My plans will also easily be able to fight against the many enemies of life and will also easily conquer them. However, he who will start the fight against the many enemies of life without Me and relies on his own reason and will, will be captured and then be treated very severely. When he will be in hard imprisonment, who will then free him, since he has to search and fight his worst enemies of life only in himself?

[8] If however, someone wins easily at My side over a lot of enemies, then the victory is indeed only My work, because he could only be victorious except by following up exactly My will, plan and counsel. If then however, the victory that was gained is My work, then also the glory and the merit will be My own.

[9] You will now sufficiently perceive how and why you cannot do anything rewarding without Me for the eternal salvation of your soul, and why you then, if you have done everything that has been commanded as what is most wise, should openly recognize before Me that you were lazy and useless helpers at My side.

[10] When a farmer cultivates his land, he fertilizes it, then he plows the soil up with the plow, sows the grains of wheat in the grooves and plows it down, and then until the harvest he does not have to do anything. Is the harvest now purely the merit and the work of the farmer or is it rather in all aspects My work and My

merit? Who created for him the 2 strong oxen for his plow? Who gave him wood and iron, and the grain to sow with the living seed? Who has already laid into it numberless new seeds and grains? From who was the light of the sun that warms up everything and brings everything to life? Who sent the fertile dew and rain? Who gave the growing up and ripening stalks the successful growth, and finally who gave the farmer the life, the strength, the senses, the ability to evaluate and the reason?

[11] When you will now think a little deeper about this image, it surely will become clear to you how extremely little can be credited to the farmer for the cultivation of the land. After all, actually nothing at all, and still he would like to say: ‘Look, all this is thanks to my effort.’ But he hardly thinks about it who the only most important Cultivator of the land of wheat was. Should he rather not acknowledge in his heart: ‘Lord, great, good and holy Father in Heaven, I thank You for Your great care. For all this was and is only Your work and will also always be. By that I was only a lazy and totally useless helper’?

[12] When this should already be said with material work, then how much more should this be said by man who I helped to cultivate his spiritual land of life with all sorts of things whereby he actually does not have to do anything else except to believe in Me and furthermore to make My godly will – as a pure present from Me – as his own in such a way as if it would be totally his, although it actually is only Mine. When such a person who is in full possession of My will is capable of doing everything and can perform great things and works, then whose merit is this mostly?”

## 68. ABOUT THE LAWS OF THE LORD



**NOW all of them** said again: “Lord and Master, everything, everything is since eternity only Your work and Your merit. We human beings are indeed in every respect nothing compared to You. Only Your love and mercy gave us the existence and You even want to exalt us to become children who



are equal to You. Therefore, we are Your work in everything, and our excellency is only Your merit. O Lord and Master, please never leave us, for without You we are absolutely nothing. What would we know of ourselves of the spiritual things, of You and of Your almighty will? And as we owe you everything, so also our faraway descendants will owe You everything, if ever they still will possess our understanding and our pure faith. But You, o Lord and Master, will take care that they will not be withdrawn too far away from the light which is now shining so brightly.”

[2] I said: “As it was until now, so also in the future this will be left to the workers in My fields and in My vineyards. What really will matter then is how they will handle My will that they know very well, be it in the right or the wrong way. Therefore, take care that after My bodily separation from you there will be no quarrels and disagreements, for those will really become the mother of the antichrist on this Earth. I am saying this now to you beforehand, so that you will prevent it. Indeed you will prevent it, but if your disciples will do that also is still another question, for also their free will, as well as yours has to be respected.

[3] My teaching gives you the highest freedom, and therefore it cannot be proclaimed with the sword and with the chains of the darkest slavery, because man must also be acquainted with and accept that which he can and will procure with the highest freedom of live. As I have given you all this for free, so you also should give it for free to those who want to have it from you.

[4] Also, I have forced nobody of you, but I called you in full freedom: ‘He who wants, let him come, listen, see and follow Me.’ And you have done that out of your free will. Therefore, act from now on like this in My name, then you will walk the right way.

[5] But he who will make a ‘must’ of it, will not be My disciple, and on his way he will encounter rocks, reefs and thorns. Take all of you a good and true example on Me. What would it cost Me to force in one moment all the people on the whole Earth by My omnipotence to completely accept My teaching and My will, as it is also possible for Me in one moment to map out with ‘must’ the

way that all the other created beings strictly have to go according to My will? But will this give them an independent moral freedom of life that will make them happy? I say to you: no, not a single one.

[6] For a dim, very limited intelligence with a little spark of My emphasized will according to which it has to be active, is indeed something very much different than a limitless inner awareness connected with an enlightened thinking-faculty, a clear reason and besides that a complete limitless free will to which I never gave My commandments and My fatherly counsel with 'you must' but always with the free 'you shall'. Because all commandments that I have given to man were in fact never laws, but only advises that My eternal love and wisdom gave to free man. With the conviction that they could give Me a so much greater honor, man has made of all these advises laws that had to be strictly followed, and not keeping them was sanctioned with temporary and eternal punishments.

[7] Moses himself has added many in order to inspire the Jews with a deeper awe for God's revealed will, and others did the same. And the present Pharisees have now reached the highest point, not only of foolishness but also of evilness that had to come by necessity. The reason why the Jewry is now in such an indescribable bad situation is the inevitable cause of the fact that the people have made compelling laws out of My advises that were given in all freedom. And how can a compelling law go together with the free will and with the equally free, never limited reason of man?

[8] The free will of man will gladly and always accept the bright illumination of his reason with the greatest thanks as a grace from above, but a severe compelling law he will curse in his will and mind. Therefore, every human being who stands under a law of 'must' is as good as continually judged, and consequently as if he were cursed.

[9] Thus, he who will give the people compelling laws in My name, will give them instead of My blessing only the hard yoke

and the heavy load of the curse, and will make them new slaves of sin and of judgment.

[10] Therefore, your care for the further spreading of My commandments should be above all, that you will not at the same time put a new and heavy to carry yoke on the shoulders of the people, but that you will free them from the old yoke.

[11] When a person with a free mind will recognize and realize the light truth of My teaching and My best fatherly will, he himself will with his free will surely make a free 'must' of it and will act freely according to it. And this alone will become the true well being of his soul. But a compelled law that is imposed on him will hardly ever or never at all do that, because firstly a compelled law for the free will of man is totally contradictory to My godly order, and such a law will only darken man and never enlighten him. And in the second place because they who are imposing compelling laws will immediately assume a higher future power and soon after that they will become proud, haughty and imperious. From their assumed godly position of authority for which the believers must often shudder and tremble more than for God Himself, they add to the pure godly announced precepts their own precepts as if it was the divine will that was newly revealed to them, and they attach to the observance of it more importance than to the observance of the pure divine commandments.

[12] From this, will proceed dark superstition, idolatry, hatred against people of different faiths, persecution, murder and the most disastrous wars. People are motivating this by all kinds of dark nonsense, so that they finally think and believe to render God a pleasant service when they commit the greatest offences and crimes against their fellowmen of different faiths. And only those who are imposing compelling laws are responsible for that.

[13] Therefore, in the beyond in Hell of which they were here zealous servants, they surely will occupy the most important places under the most relentless compelling laws, for in My Heavens there is only the highest freedom, however, by that also the highest unity, accomplished by pure love and the greatest wisdom.

[14] I have now expounded this to you truly and openly and have clearly explained it, and you also know now in freedom and without the least inner compulsion that which you as spreaders of My gospel should take into account. But if any of you or of your disciples want to act differently, then he will be warned indeed but for this reason there will be no inner compulsion by Me. But from the rotten and bad fruits the better people will soon notice what kind of mentality such a later disciple has.

[15] But because I am informing you this now, you must not think that by that I am abolishing the law that was given by Moses, because actually it is entirely the same which I am giving you back now in its original purity. Only the old, rusted ‘must’ I am abolishing and I give you the old complete freedom back. And the work to save your souls from the hard yoke and the judgment and of the actual Satan – the prince of the night and darkness who you know already – implies mostly that from now on you will stand no more under any compelling law in My name.

[16] As I am now giving you back the full freedom out of Myself, do also the same in My name to your brothers. Baptize them in the name of My eternal Love, that is the Father, in the name of the Word, that is the Son of the Father who has become flesh, and in the name of His Spirit of truth. And by that, wipe out in them the old hereditary evil that consists of the now well known damnable ‘must’ of the law. And I am asking you now if all of you have understood that?”

## 69. AGRICOLA ASKS FOR GUIDELINES FOR THE EDUCATION OF THE YOUTH



ALMOST all of them confirmed that, but **Agricola** came to Me and says: “O Lord and Master, I myself understand and acknowledge now completely the pure divine truth of this clear statement of Yours, and also realize that the cursed ‘must’ of the law is a work of human blindness, and robs man inevitably of all the higher light because it blocks all sources by

which the pure spiritual light out of the Heavens could flow in him, and by that it also pulls his soul with iron force into the dark matter and squeezes it to death. But this great evil has grown in our time to such a power and extent that it probably could never be banned completely from the material Earth.

[2] If we only consider that the excess of Roman laws for the strict maintenance of which at least 800,000 blind and rude soldiers and a not smaller number of the very darkest pagan priests with their limitless full power are acting as loyal guards. To break through and destroy this horrifying dam is for human strength as good as impossible, even with the best will and the greatest and most energetic wisdom.

[3] I only speak here about our state in which until now as it is known, still the greatest civilization can be found, and I do not want to speak about other rich people on Earth where the human beings can hardly be distinguished from the wild animals. But if I already encounter difficulties with us Romans who until now cannot be conquered, then how will this be possible with the completely wild nations of this Earth?

[4] Yes, a few like me and surely still different others, will accept all that with the greatest joy, but as soon as in the pure light of the Spirit, groups and communities will be established, the priests will knock at the door of the emperor and will pressure him until he will even have to draw the sword against such communities. Only then will the old compelling law really be slain with iron clamps around the poor nations. Woe those who will then still dare to spread this teaching of Yours among the people.

[5] And now, I still have to mention another point that also seems to be of great importance to me, and that is the education of the youth from early age. Many thousands of children are often educated in a totally wrong way, either by the ape-love of their parents or by their tyrannical severity and other blindness. Besides, for the so-called better part of the people in the cities there are also the schools which are all under the authority of the priests, where the children are indeed taught how to read, write and calculate, but

concerning the pure spiritual they never hear anything else except all kinds of dark superstition.

[6] Question: how shall we proceed in order to firstly show and make it clear to the parents how they have to educate their children, starting from the house? And if it would be possible to have a good result in this respect, how we then have to proceed to establish the public elementary schools in such a way that they will grow up for the people as a true salvation for the soul according to Your teaching? Lord and Master, no matter how indescribable good and true Your advises are in itself – and would even be more so by the living and perhaps general application of it – it almost seems to be equally impossible that the people would convert themselves everywhere for that in a complete natural way. Your omnipotence will for a great deal have to cooperate very clearly on that, otherwise, until the end of times not much could be accomplished with humanity as it is now.

[7] I surely am no prophet, but as a rather old statesman I have gained much experience. I know the government institution and the people, and consequently I can also predict more or less how this case will be accepted by means of a natural-human way of communication and what the result will be.

[8] Therefore, please show us besides the pure, divine true teaching the reliable ways, of which as far as I am concerned am now fulfilled, and from now on certainly also my whole house, and show us how we, weak human beings can inform in an effective way our many fellowmen. For otherwise, the people will – except a few exceptions – remain until the end of times the same as what they are now: nothing else than animals, gifted with some thinking-faculty and a little material reason, connected to a sensual free and evil will.”

## 70. THE PROCESS OF SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT



SAID: “As an honest statesman you have spoken now really wisely, and this is indeed the situation as you have clearly and without reservation described to Me. And I tell you that now at this moment we will not change it, although we surely would be able to do it.

[2] For as the earthly day is not dawning at once, but gradually from the first hardly noticeable glimmer of the morning until the full sunrise through numerous stages of increasing light, so it is also the case with the dawn of the spiritual day with the people on this Earth. For if I in one time suddenly would bring up a complete spiritual day for all the people, then they would – as long as they still have to carry their heavy body – become lazy and would not bother too much anymore in searching and examining. They will indeed keep the commandments and act according to the shining truth that is in them, but more in a mechanical way than in a complete living way when people can see the spiritual day arising in themselves by their own searching, examination and acting. And because they are experiencing great joy at that, they also teach their brothers who still are living in their own night, and exhort and encourage them to search for their own inner spiritual day. Then this is certainly better than when each person would be placed immediately in the fullness of the inner spiritual day without his own interference and acting.

[3] Particularly in this very dark time the disciples who will spread this teaching of Mine will also be equipped with everything that is now only in My power, and they will be capable to perform great signs in My name, wherever and whenever that may be necessary for the true well being of the people. But nevertheless, it always will be of much greater value when people will be converted to believe in Me and will act according to My teaching.

[4] For by the pure word the soul experiences no coercion, but

remains completely free in his recognizing and acting while signs that are preceding this teaching, will impose on the soul an undeniably coercion of faith and will consequently not be any better than the ‘must’ of the law.

[5] However, concerning your external laws of the state, those should exist for the flesh of the people, for as long as man is not fully reborn in the Spirit, external laws of the state are necessary for him because they are training him in humility and patience which are extremely necessary for the attainment of the full rebirth. On the other hand they will help to keep dark and evil man away from causing a great deal of evil to his fellowman, because through sharply drawn boundaries these laws are allotting to everyone what is their own, and will chastise the one who willfully acts against it.

[6] For this reason, I am also saying that you should remain obedient to the worldly power, no matter if you find it good or even very bad, because its power has been given from above. However, once someone is reborn in the Spirit, he will, just like Me not trouble himself anymore by a worldly law.

[7] Children however, should be treated and educated with true and serious love. Each pampering and indulgence from the side of the parents is a great harm for the soul of the children, which will be accounted as guilt to the parents.

[8] Wise parents will also be blessed with wise children.

[9] With the education of children a ‘must’ is necessary until the good of the laws has become a voluntary and cheerful obedience. Once this is the case, then the child has abolished the ‘must’ of the law in himself and has become a free human being.

[10] Thus, do what you have heard now, then everything will be good and just. Whoever has still something to ask, can do that now, then I will give him light, so that he can walk and act in the clear daylight.”



## 71. HOW TO MAKE AN END TO THE PAGAN PRIESTHOOD



**N**OW the Roman **Agrippa**, living in Emmaus came with his companion **Laius to Me** and said: “Lord and Master, You have now really informed us about great and wonderful things, and by this it is like a heavy stone that has fallen from our heart. But one thing, which our friend Agricola has also mentioned as a great hindrance for the spreading of Your teaching, You still did not especially touch upon, and that is how to conquer the extreme stubborn pagan priesthood, which will be very difficult.

[2] It is already difficult with the Jewish priests here who still have an idea of the one, true God. How much more difficult will it be with the pagan priests with their rigid materialistic opinions, who have not a single notion of one true God and who worship their idols in front of the people and to which the people must give sacrifices often of the coarsest matter like stone, bronze and wood made by sculptors. So it surely would be good if also about this matter You would like to say something to us.”

[3] **I** said: “Also about this you should not be worried unnecessary. Because firstly I say to you that you will win more easily a 100 pagan priests for My teaching than one Pharisee, because the pagan priests have lost enormously of their old esteem by the Greek and also Roman philosophers who were formed after their example. And secondly the many roaming magicians who came from all directions to Rome, largely discredited the performance of wonders with the people. Because of a certain decency and respect, the people is still going along with many things and by way of pastime they look at their performances, but they do not attach special belief on that anymore. And it will then also happen with the people that soon there will be no more pagan priests at all, while the institution of Pharisees of the Jews will still continue for a long time. What still will be more serious with the old institution of Pharisees is that unfortunately a new institution of Pharisees will develop in My name which will be much worse than the

present one.

[4] When I explained the 2 chapters of the prophet Isaiah to you, I also have shown you the new institution of Pharisees. So I do not have to show and explain it to you again.

[5] However, concerning the pagan priests: their own darkness is already pressing on them a great deal, and many are desiring for a possible better and a more true light. Because of that, many are traveling from time to time to Egypt in order to receive there from some wise man more light about the destiny of man. For this reason, things are not as bad with the pagan priesthood as you imagine, and because of this situation I did not mention them specifically. However, because you have imagined insurmountable difficulties it was then also necessary to correct your thoughts about this.

[6] But I emphasize to all of you and I lay it to your heart that under no condition you should make a compelling law of My teaching for the people, so that at least among a few it will remain in its free purity until the end of times of this Earth, and so I will stay continuously active in the spirit among you.

[7] In the course of time there surely will rise a great number of partly or complete false prophets, so-called in My name, and one will claim this and the other that. However, those who can see into the pure teaching will surely oppose them with all meekness and patience, and finally have the victory on their side.

[8] But the number of those who are completely pure will, compared to the number who are impure, always be small. And look, this I cannot prevent, unless I would change all free men into animal-like machines through My word of power. And generally you still will be much less able to do that.

[9] If I wanted to prevent this by My almighty will, then it would not have been necessary for Me to enter the flesh of this Earth, for I was also able to guide and rule all other created beings eternally from My Heavens by My almighty will as I am doing this now also, and for this reason you certainly cannot notice any change – not even a small one – in all the created beings. For it truly is not

for the sake of the stones, the plants and the animals that I now have come Myself as physical human being on this Earth, but for the sake of man who is totally free in his will and insight. And then I can give him no divine ‘must’ but only the full divine freedom as a true gospel from the Heavens, and leave it up to man to freely choose and act.

[10] According to My order, care has also been taken that by the non-observance of My teaching also the old bad consequences will come along with it. Of this you can be completely sure. And this is sufficient to restrain those people to whom My pure teaching had been clearly announced but who then will still go back to the world.

[11] However, at a certain moment, when the misery becomes too big, I will know how to clean the Earth of the old filth. I already have shown you what the physical and moral bad consequences of sin are for the soul: the body will decline in all kinds of terrible diseases and the soul in all kinds of doubts through superstition or wrong belief and the resulting foolish and bad acts.

[12] From all this, someone who stands in the pure light of life will easily recognize in what kind of spiritual light the physical and morally tormented people are in. When you see such people, then go to them and say: ‘Peace be with you. You are on wrong ways and we have come to you, guided by the Spirit of the Lord, to announce to you the true gospel: the ways to the light of life, which – in God – is the true salvation of the soul.’

[13] If they accept you, then stay there, teach them to understand the truth and to act according to its easy to understand principles. When they have accepted them cheerfully and are soon willing to act accordingly, then speak a prayer over them and lay your hands on the sick, so that they will be healed of their diseases, and then baptize them in the true manner which I have already shown you earlier. Then by that you will have accomplished a work according to My will and which is pleasing to Me, and by that your reward in Heaven will greatly increase.


[14] Where and when you will have converted and baptized such

a community and have confirmed it in My name, then appoint among them the best-instructed and most loyal fellow-citizen as a kind guardian and supervisor over the community. Give him particularly the gifts of the Holy Spirit so that he can be a true benefactor for the community that has been entrusted to him. But do also not impose on him any compelling law, something about which he also must watch over the members of the community, with the exception of children, about which I already have given you an indication.

[15] But although such a guardian is appointed by you in My name, he should therefore not enjoy any earthly respect, but he should just like you be a humble and very simple servant of the to him entrusted brothers and sisters, and should not let himself be honored or even be rewarded for his services, because what he has received for nothing he should in all love give it back for nothing to his brothers and sisters who in one respect or another are less gifted.

[16] However, whatever the love of his community will give him in freedom, he also can accept in the same manner as I also have allowed it to you, because he who does something good to the one who has been send by Me, will also receive the reward of him who has been send. And by that you know now everything that is mainly necessary to know. Many other things you will know at the right time.”

## 72. THE TRINITY IN GOD AND MAN

 **OW a Pharisee** came to Me and said: “Lord and Master, in Your discussion You have said to us that Your disciples who will spread Your true teaching of life and by the laying on of hands will baptize those who have actually accepted Your teaching. That means to strengthen them in the name of the Father, who is the Love, in the name of the Word, that is the Son or the wisdom of the Father, and in the name of the Holy Spirit, that is the all-capable will of the Father and the Son.

[2] I think however that by that, many different points of view can easily exist which can be prevented when all those who have become believers would be baptized by Your disciples only in Your name or only in the name of the Father, because in future times those three – although the highest and holiest – denominations will probably bring people who do not have such a good understanding to believe in three separate gods, as three divine personalities. So also, the old Egyptians have in the course of time made of the ancient pure belief in only one true God a great number of gods out of the many qualities of Jehovah. After that, the blind fantasy of the people has changed it in all kinds of individually existing and specific active divine beings. They constructed temples and after that they also honored them in a special way. But at the same time they sunk away so deeply in such an unprecedented materialism that one often attributed the most common human weaknesses and perverted passions to the imagined divine personalities.

[3] This could also be the case in course of time, maybe after a few centuries when even more foolish and blinder people would start to imagine three gods, only on the basis of the denominations for the supreme conceptions that were heard during baptism. Then it would certainly not take long before one will greatly worship those three imagined gods in temples that will be specifically build for them. However, if this will happen, it will not take long before the people will also start to worship Your disciples – who they came to know by name – and also their successors in the same manner, and they will pray to them in the temples that will be build for them. According to my opinion this could be prevented in the easiest and permanent way when one should only make God known under one name to the people. What do You say about that?”

[4] **I said: “You have said that very well and correctly, but still I cannot omit to urge you to do it anyway because with those three denominations the being of God as a whole is explained and is clearly brought to the attention of the people.**

[5] It is true that by that in a certain way for someone who has a less good understanding a kind of threefold divine personality will come forth. But in order to reflect in all aspects the most inner truth, one cannot express it differently than how it is.

[6] Look, man has been created totally in God's image, and whoever wants to know himself completely must realize that as one and the same human being he actually also consists of 3 personalities. You firstly have a body, provided of all the necessary sense organs and other parts of the body, from very big to hardly unimaginably small, which are necessary for a free and independent life. This body has, for the benefit of the development of the spiritual soul its own very natural life within that is different in every respect from the spiritual life of the soul. The body lives on material food of which the blood and the other nutritious juices are formed for the different parts of the body.

[7] The heart has a special living mechanism of its own within by which it continuously has to expand and then contract again. By that, the blood that makes the body alive together with the other juices that are made from it, will be pumped to all parts of the body. And by its contracting movement the heart will assimilate the blood again to saturate it with new nutritious foods and then pump it out again in order to feed the most various parts of the body. In these numerous and most divergent parts of the body an equal number of different nature spirits are living within, which are extracting from the blood those substances that serve the purpose and which are necessary for the nutrition and the maintenance of that part of the body that is controlled by such a spirit. Then they are assimilated into the parts of the body that are controlled by them, that means by the very spirits. In this way they are making the body more powerful and stronger, and without this continuous activity of the heart, man – as far as his body is concerned – would not be able to stay alive for 1 hour.

[8] Look, with this activity of life, the soul has nothing to do with

it, because this activity has no connection with the free will of the soul, no more than with the very activity of the lungs, the liver, the spleen, the stomach, the intestines, the kidneys, and so much more countless parts of his body. The soul does not know these at all and he also cannot care for it. Nevertheless, the body is as a complete separate personality one and the same human being, and does and acts as if the two were totally the same personality. But then, who of you can say that the body and the soul are one and the same thing?

[9] If we consider now only the soul, then we will see that also he is in himself entirely a complete human being who has substantially spiritually also in himself and for the benefit of himself precisely the same parts as the body, and in a higher, spiritual respect he is using them just like the body is using his material parts.

[10] Now although the body on the one hand and the soul on the other hand represent two totally different human beings or persons, of who each has his own individual activity, they finally cannot even understand the how and why of those activities, and they are in the light of the actual purpose of life nevertheless only one human being. Consequently, nobody can claim neither of himself nor of anybody else that he is not an individual but a twofold human being, because the body must serve the soul, and this one, with his reason and will, must serve the body. And consequently, the soul is equally responsible for the acts for which he has made use of the body, as well as for his very own acts that exist of all kinds of thoughts, wishes, desires and lusts.

[11] When we however consider more in detail the life of the soul as such, we soon will discover that also he is a substantial bodily being, who in himself stands not much higher than at best for instance the soul of an ape. Although he possesses an instinctive thinking-faculty of a somewhat higher level than a simple animal, an intellect and a higher free opinion about certain things and their interrelation would be out of the question.

[12] This higher potential in the soul that is in fact the highest and

equal to God, comes from a pure essential, spiritual, third man who lives in the soul. Through him, he can distinguish that which is true from the false and that which is good from the evil, and is able to think freely in all imaginable directions and is able to will in complete freedom. As he – supported by the spirit – will direct himself with his free will towards that which is purely true and good, he slowly in the same proportion will make himself completely equal with the spirit who lives in him. Thus: strong, powerful and wise, and is then identical with him, as being reborn in the spirit.

[13] When this is the case, the soul is as good as one being with his spirit, just as the more noble parts of a perfect soul – which in fact exist of the very different nature spirits in the body – will completely change into the spiritual substantial body, which you can call the flesh of the soul, and finally will also change into the essential body of the spirit under which the true resurrection of the flesh has to be understood on the youngest, most true day of the life of the soul, that begins when a man is completely reborn in the spirit, be it already here in this life or – what will cost some more trouble and time – in the beyond.

[14] Even though a completely reborn man in the spirit is only one perfect human being, his being exists nevertheless in himself eternally out of a well distinguishable trinity.

[15] How this is possible, I will explain very clearly to you. So listen carefully.

### **73. THE ACTIVITIES OF THE 3 BODIES OF MAN**



If you just are a little observant, you will notice that with every thing and every object there is a distinguishable trinity. What will strike the eye first is of course the outer form, for without this no thing and no object could be imagined and could also not have any existence. And when the first exists, the second one is of course the content of the existent things and objects, for without this, they also could not exist and they also



could not have any form or outer shape. Now what is the third, which is as necessary for the existence of a thing or object as the first and the second one? Look, that is an inner power in every thing or object that keeps the content of the thing or object thoroughly together and which forms their actual being. And since this power consists of the content and consequently also of the outer form of the things and objects, it is also the original being of all existence, no matter of what kind its nature may be. And without this power, the existence of a being or thing or object would be quite as unimaginable as without content and without an outer form.

[2] You can see now that the mentioned 3 parts are as such easy to be distinguished, since the outer form is not its content and the content is not its inherent power. And still, the 3 mentioned parts are completely one, because if there would be no power, there would be no content and certainly also no form.

[3] Now let us go back to our soul. The soul must, because of a sure and certain existence, have an outer form, namely that of a human being. Consequently, the outer form is that which we call the body or also the flesh, be it still material or spiritualized substantial, no matter how.

[4] Now when the soul – as far as his form is concerned – consists of a human being, he also will have together with the form his corresponding content. This content, or the inner body of the soul, is his very own being, therefore, the soul.

[5] And if all this is present, then there will be also the power that consists of the whole soul. And this is the spirit which finally is everything in everything, since without this spirit it would be impossible to have a solid substance, and without this also no body and consequently also no outer form.

[6] Although the 3 distinguishable personalities are as a whole only one being, they still have to be mentioned and distinguished each one of them separately.

[7] In the spirit, or the eternal essence, lives love, as the all-accomplishing power, the highest intelligence and living firm will.

All this together brings about the substance of the soul and gives him his form or being of the body.

[8] Thus, once the soul or the human being is present – according to the will and the intelligence of the spirit – the spirit withdraws itself deep into the center and gives the now existing soul according to its deepest inner will and intelligence a free will that is as if it were separated from it, and a free, as if it were independent intelligence that the soul can, partly by his outer sense-organs and partly by an inner capability of perception acquire to himself and perfect it as if it would be completely the very own work of this completely free intelligence.

[9] As a result of this condition that is formed by necessity in which he feels as if it were separated from his spirit, the soul is capable to receive an outer as well as an inner revelation. If he receives it, accepts and acts according to it, he will also by that become one with his spirit and therefore will more and more come to the unlimited freedom of the spirit, not only with regard to the intelligence and the freedom of will according to this enlightened intelligence, but also in the power and the might to accomplish everything whatever he recognizes and wills.

[10] Again, from this you can see that the soul – as the thought of the spirit that has changed into living substance, which is actually the spirit itself – can still in a certain way be considered as something that came forth as second from the spirit, without being something else, except the spirit itself.

[11] The fact that finally the soul becomes visible as an individual, clothed with an outer body that in a certain way appears as a third personality, is shown to you by daily experience. The body is for the soul an outer revelation of his deep inner spirit and has the purpose of turning the intelligence and the free will of the soul inside out, limit it, and only from then on search and find the inner limitlessness of the intelligence, of the will and its true power, and by that, as an infinite glorified and completely independent individual to become one with the inner spirit, which is the only thing that really exists in the human being.

[12] Since now, by this explanation of Mine you can hopefully clearly see how a man as such – as well as any other thing from a lower level – consists of a certain distinguishable ‘three’, we will pass over as a conclusion of this supremely important explanation to the triune Being of God Himself, so that you will be able to clearly and plainly see why I, because of the higher and inner living truth had to advise you emphatically to baptize in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit – that means: to strengthen – the people who believe in Me and who have in fact accepted My teaching.

[13] Thus, listen again carefully to what you will hear from My mouth in order to make the whole entirely and truthfully complete.

[14] Look, as all of you very well know that the book of the prophets says and explains that I, Jesus, Christ – also called Son of Man, although also defined and named by different names, namely as Father, Son and Holy Spirit – am the true God. And still, God is only one individual majesty in the highest perfect form of a man.

[15] As you well know now, the soul, His outer body and His deep inner Spirit are united in such a way that they are only one Being, or finally consist of one individual substance. But still, they form with respect to each other a well distinguishable ‘3’. So are also the Father, the Son and the Spirit united, as is taught by the Scriptures of the old fathers and prophets that I have just named.

[16] Once David expressed the wish that his soul, his body and his spirit be found blameless in the eyes of God. When the words of the old, wise king sound like this, could one not ask: What? Does man consist of 3 persons or 3 men? If this is already not possible with man, by whom the splitting of the three for the sake of his development and true perfection of life is clearly perceptible, how could God, who is from eternity within Himself in the greatest perfection only One, be split into three different persons or even three Gods?

## 74. THE BEING OF GOD



LISTEN, if it is sure that God as Creator of all beings – yet different from all other beings who were created by Him – was, is and will be eternal, is it then for Him an immovable necessity to remain in that particular original center? If it is already given to man to move freely with his body in all directions and even more so with his spirit, how could God in His limitless freedom restrict Himself in that wherein He gave even His created beings full freedom? I say to you: the divine infinity has the power in everything to also move endlessly free. He therefore will also have the right to change His glory into the flesh in order to be visibly and understandably present before His created human beings as an eternal entirely perfect Man.

[2] But the endless glory of God does not have the power – and can impossibly have it – to create Gods outside of Himself who are completely equal to Him. For if He would be able to do that, He would be able to create besides the one endless universe also other equally endless universes, of which any somewhat clearly thinking person can already see from a distance that this is the purest nonsense. For if the first universe is endless in all imaginable directions, then where must the second equally endless universe begin?

[3] A second perfect God with the fullest endless glory is therefore quite as unimaginable as a second endless universe. And so you can clearly see that I who am now just like you walking as a Son of Man in the flesh, am not a second but only the one and the same God who I was since eternity before all created beings and also will remain in all eternity. Therefore, I cannot do anything that is contrary to My eternal glory, but everything for it.

[4] If I created outside of Me two more Gods, like for instance the Son and the Holy Spirit, so that the two would be individually different from Me, then they inevitably could claim all My unlimited power, without which no God could be imagined, no more than one can imagine a second or even third endless universe

that would be divided in a certain way, limiting each other. However, if this would be thinkable, then what about God's sovereignty of which there can only be one?

[5] There can however exist only one such endless divine sovereign authority. For if there were three, then God's endless one Kingdom would be split, and the existence of it would be quite as unimaginable and impossible as the existence of three endless universes next to each other.

[6] The one Kingdom of the one God can exist eternally because only He is the only King and Lord of it, as it is written in the books of the prophets, who have prophesized out of the mouth of God: 'God will give His glory to no one else' (Isaiah 42:8). For only I, Christ, am the only God. Human beings, angels, sovereignties and powers, yes, all things in Heaven and on all globes have always bowed before Me and will throughout eternity only bow before Me and never for anybody else, just like the cosmic spaces of creation that seem endless in your eyes are devoured by the one endless space of creation, and compared to that, they appear like a total nothing.

[7] If by the names Father, Son and Holy Spirit, not one self-existing God – the one primordial Being – has to be understood, and instead of that a Son that is separated from the Father and likewise a different Holy Spirit would be accepted, then what kind of God would the Father be?

[8] When it is stated in the books of the prophets – which are not understood by the people because of their rude simple-mindedness caused by themselves – that the Father clothes the Son with all power and glory in Heaven and on all globes and worlds, and has given Him the Holy Spirit as cooperator to sanctify and to watch over the new teaching from the Heavens, which is now given to you and over which only the Son, who I am, has the leadership, just like over all other things, then I ask you: what kind of God do you think the Father is? Can you still see a God in Him?

[9] And if in your material-human blindness you still can imagine another one, then you unquestionably would imagine Him to be

useless and inactive, since you clearly have to perceive that under these conditions He cannot accomplish anything anymore and can also not govern over anything anymore. You surely will have to realize in a dark human manner that God the Father has perhaps delegated His government to His Son forever because of His high age – just like the old king Pharaoh in Egypt who delegated the government to Joseph – and also because of His weakness and tiredness so that He can enjoy His rest being totally inactive.

[10] Can you really imagine that the Father has become old, and that He wants to lay down His work because He now has besides Himself a Son who is in all aspects equally almighty as He is, and further still has an equally powerful almighty Holy Spirit who He created out of Himself and His Son, and that He will delegate now the whole government to both of them, while He Himself will abdicate.

[11] Oh how extremely heathenish foolish, silly and blind would human reason be to fall into such a madness.

[12] If there exist a Son and a Holy Spirit who are different from the Father and would exist besides Himself, as this is the case with angels and human beings, then they can be nothing else except His created beings, because they did not receive their being – no matter how perfect it may be – of themselves as a result of their very own and eternal perfect power, but only from the one Creator.

[13] However, how can there be a complete, divine relationship or a real unity between a spirit without body and form and a spirit with body and form? Can it be said that the Son – who is a bodily Person and, as you can see, has a body – is in the Father if the Father has no body, no shape and no form? Or can the infinite Father, without having a body, shape and form be in the Son?

[14] Moreover: if the Holy Spirit is a third person as such, coming from the Father and the Son, then how can that person have the same qualities as those two are having and who are equally eternal? Or can that which receives its existence from another person, be equal to that which has its existence out of himself? Can eternity ever be equal to the all-fleeing time, or the limited

area to infinity?

[15] Even if one can accept that all the times of times are contained in eternity and are moving and changing, then it is however impossible to think and assert that time, no matter how long it lasts, can comprise eternity. Just like one can also think and assert that the endless primordial space surely can contain all spaces – which, no matter how big they may be, are finally still limited – but these last ones can impossible contain the primordial space.

[16] Thus, if the Holy Spirit would really just like any other created being go out of the Father and the Son as a being as such, then he obviously would be a god of time and not of eternity. However, such a god could then, just like all that which is timely, in course of time cease to exist. But if this is the case, then who would be able to give an eternal life to all human beings and angels and maintain it?

[17] In order that this matter of the highest importance would still be more clear and plain to you, we will continue this subject, and so you listen to Me.

## 75. THE LORD AS SON



F furthermore, the Son was present since eternity, then how could He be procreated? And when the Holy Spirit was also there since eternity, how could He then come forth from the Father and the Son and have His beginning in Them. If according to your mind and reason the three divine persons – contested by you, of whom the future people could easily make three Gods – are all three eternal, that means without a beginning, then one of them could not have given the beginning of his existence to the others.

[2] I am, as I am now with you as a Man in the flesh, the Son, and I was never procreated by anyone else except by Myself, and consequently I am My highest own Father since eternity. Where else could the Father be except in the Son, and where else could the Son be except in the Father? Thus only one God and Father in

one person.

[3] This body of Mine is therefore the glorified shape of the Father for the benefit of the people and angels, so that I could be an understandable and visible God for them. Now you can see Me, listen to Me and speak to Me, and by that still stay alive. Because before, it was so that no one could see God and live. I am now God in every respect. In Me is the Father. And the power that goes out of Me according to My love, wisdom and almighty will and that fills up the eternal endless space throughout and which is also active everywhere, is the Holy Spirit.

[4] As you can see Me now as God-Man with you, I am with My whole original central Being certainly completely and undivided in your midst, here in this dining-hall on the Mount of Olives. And thus, as highest true God and Man at the same time I am nowhere else, not on this Earth and even less on another. But still, by the power, which is the Holy Spirit, that goes out of Me, I fill all the Heavens and the earthly material and endless space with My activity. I can see everything therein, from the greatest to the smallest, I understand everything, know everything, decide on everything, and create, guide and rule over everything.

[5] Now, when you clearly know this out of My mouth, you also will understand for which reason you shall strengthen by laying your hands upon them, in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, those people who believe in Me and who are also acting according to My teaching, after it has been made known to them.

[6] If you understand the reason now, you also will perceive that the people who are truly and correctly taught by you, will not easily come to the idea of accepting three gods as such, because you have named the three qualities. But I also urge you to give the people a real and truthful light, because where this will be lacking, the people will easily and quickly wither and change to all kinds of false doctrines, and then it will be difficult to bring them on the way of the full truth.

[7] The fact that, despite all your faithfulness there still will be



false teachers and prophets who will mislead a lot of people, you surely will not be able to avoid, and you will not be blamed for that, as little as a farmer who sows pure wheat on his land between which his enemy has scattered weeds during the night, will be accused of sin when on his land between the wheat the weeds grow rampantly and weaken the good grain.

[8] It is of course the desire of My love that all the people of this Earth will walk on the light way of the truth and therefore will go towards eternal life. But because I – for the reasons which I already have made known to you – have to withdraw My almightiness, every human being is completely free and can finally believe and do what he himself wants.

[9] When you spread My teaching, you better influence the reason and by that the mind of the people. For once the reason and the mind are penetrated, faith becomes alive and successfully active by the good will. Without the right enlightenment of the reason and the mind, faith will only be present after a dumb and blind acceptance of that which man has heard from one or the other authority. Such a faith is however actually no faith at all. It does not awaken the mind to a voluntary activity that makes the heart happy, and is therefore dead since it is without the free joy-giving works.

[10] Works that were accomplished by man because of an external imposed ‘must’ do not have any value for the soul, since they do not awaken the soul but are oppressing it because they were not voluntarily brought with joy out of an inner conviction, but only out of fright for the punishment that is threatened while one feels secretly offence, fury and rage.

[11] When I am already saying to you that you should be equally perfect in understanding and pure love as the Father in Heaven, then your disciples should be too. Therefore, I also say to you the following: examine everything beforehand and keep that which is good and true.

[12] What I am advising you now to observe yourselves you also should advice to your future disciples. I very well could desire now

from you to believe Me what I will say and advise to you without further explanations, because the signs which I have done before your eyes have surely given Me the authority which compels you to believe Me. But such a compelled faith is by far still no inner light of the soul and does not awaken him for a joyful deed.

[13] The fact that this is indeed so, are proving your continuous questions, and by that you recognize openly that faith, which is only based on authority is giving the soul much too little light. And this lack in you is only done away by My explanations. As you now still want clear explanations, which are also salutary, so also your disciples will want this from you, and you should not be thrifty with it if you want to control the appearance of the false prophets as much as possible.

[14] You also will perform signs, and the false ones will do the same with the help of all kind of deceit, and therefore the signs that are performed by you will always be a meager proof for the realness of the teaching that is announced by you to the people. But whatever you will be impressing in the reason and mind of the people by means of lightening words will remain an eternal, indelible, living proof of the truth of the teaching out of My Heavens. Such a clearly understood truth will only then make you and your disciples completely free. And now, I again have revealed a lot and given you much light, and therefore I am asking you again if you have well understood this.”

[15] **All of them** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, we now understood it very well, because now You have spoken again very freely and openly.”

[16] Then **I** said: “We still have the time. If anybody still wants to know something, let him ask.”

## 76. ABOUT INFINITE SPACE AND ETERNITY



**I**N this invitation of Mine, **one of the Jewish Greeks**, who we already know, stood up and said: “Lord and Master, out of Your mouth and with Your permission, also out of the mouth of Raphael we already have heard so many enlightened truths that I really cannot think about anything else which is unknown to me, and so it will be for each one of us difficult to ask You another question about which You still would not have given any explanation. And whatever You have explained to us, is explained in such a way that even a very simple mind should understand it very clearly. Therefore, there are no more questions left that we could ask You in order to receive a more clear light.”

[2] **I** said: “Hail your soul if he has absorbed now already so much light of life. However, if you cannot find any corners in yourself that are not enlightened, then there will certainly be someone else who still can perceive many dark spots in himself, and in course of time maybe you again also.”

[3] When the Jewish Greek heard that from Me, he bowed before Me and sat down again.

[4] Then **Lazarus** said: “Lord and Master, I still have a few of those dark corners in myself. If ever You would like to be so merciful to enlighten these, that would be a great relief for my soul.”

[5] **I** said: “I already know for what you are thirsting, and I also could lay an enlightened answer in your heart, but because it here concerns the enlightenment of all who are present here, so that many a man among you would be aware if also in himself it is already a complete light, you should ask your question openly, then I also will give an audible and clear answer to everyone.”

[6] Then **Lazarus** continued: “Lord and Master. After what You have explained to us about the great spheres and heavenly bodies, about the shell globes and about the great Cosmic Man, it has become very clear in me concerning the overwhelming endless

greatness of the eternal unlimited space. But soon after that, I discovered a very big dark abyss, over which even my most daring thought dare not to fly over.

[7] Look, the fact that the space of creation is infinite and thus can have no end in any direction, is very clear to me and certainly also to everyone. But what is the actual eternity of it? Who has stretched out space so infinitely far, and how and when? What is actually eternity, and how, in time and space, is God Himself eternal and infinite in everything? Look, Lord and Master, that is for a mortal human being regarding You certainly a very improper question, but can a soul who has a need of light, help it if such thoughts come up in him?

[8] **I said: “You named it a very improper question regarding Me. I however, call this a very good and very proper question, and will give to all of you an answer that is as clear as possible.**

[9] **Look, God, space and eternity are again equal to the concepts of Father, Son and Spirit. The Father is entirely Love and consequently an eternal striving for the most perfect existence by the power of the eternal will in that love. Space, or the Son, is also from that eternal striving of love the eternal resulting existence. Eternity, or the Spirit, as the endless initial power in the Father and the Son is the working of and accomplishment of the strivings of the love in the Son.**

[10] **If space started from one point that expanded in all directions unto infinity, then firstly it was as little as infinite as the great Cosmic Man. Secondly, the question arises out of itself: what was that which undoubtedly surrounded that point endlessly far in all imaginable directions from which later the infinite space of creation expanded. Was it the ether without light, or was it the heathenish chaos, or was it a complete firm substance, or was it the air or water or fire?**

[11] **If it was one of those named things, then how did that point in space have the power in itself to drive such endless large quantities of substances out of itself endless times into the infinite. And where did those substances end up if the eternal endless space**

came from this original point? Then there is no other possibility except that they have to be outside of the endless space, just like in the beginning when they were also outside of that point out of which the endless space would have come forth. However, if this could be somehow imaginable, then the space of creation would again be limited, and even if it would expand eternally farther and farther, then it still could never be infinite.

[12] With this you can see that the space of creation was out of necessity eternally endless in all directions and can never have known a beginning. And since God, space and eternity are identical – just like I already have told you – then God, who unites all these concepts in Himself, is also without beginning, for a beginning of God is quite as inconceivable as the beginning of the existence of the endless space and at the same time of the eternal time. I believe that this is now made clear enough, so that everyone can understand this.

[13] But I still can see a certain dark rock in you, and you still are not able to climb over it. Look, this rock exists of the fact that you are imagining the endless and eternal space as dead in itself and without any life intelligence. And therefore you also cannot understand how God as the only eternal life principle has found in a certain way Himself in the eternal and endless death and has recognized and understood Himself as the most perfect life.

[14] Yes, if one has such an idea of the endless and eternal space of creation, then he can indeed very difficult or not at all understand how the infinite Spirit-God was able to find also in eternity His way in the eternal endless death as a perfect life.

[15] Therefore, form yourself precisely an opposite idea of the eternal endless big space. Imagine that in it there is not a single little point that is without life and without intelligence, and that even that which is in your eyes dead and which seems to be completely without life, is not dead and without life, but only judged by God's almighty will, just like you yourselves can observe from a heavenly body or from its apparent lifeless elements.

[16] However, if all heavenly bodies with their most divers elements are nothing else and also cannot be anything else except ideas and thoughts of Himself that are fixed by God's almighty will, then how can they be considered by men as dead and without any intelligence?

[17] If God, who is identical with the endless space and its eternal time, is in Himself entirely the highest and most perfect Life, then how can that which wholly comes out of Him be dead, without life and without intelligence?

[18] Consequently, that which exist and which seems to be dead in your eyes, is only judged by God in this way and can return to the complete free life as soon as God will unloose the firm bands of His will of such a judged thing.

[19] You have seen something similar with Me and with My permission also with Raphael when stones were suddenly changed into their original ether, or when this ether became a firm stone of which the pillar along the way to Emmaus gives you a very tangible example.

[20] Since all this is so and can impossibly be otherwise, you should, in order to really come to a true representation of God, completely ban from the endless space all that which is in relation to dead, and imagine nothing else than life and once more life and nothing else than intelligence and once more intelligence, for in the endless Being of God's intelligence and power no death can exist.

## **77. COMPARISON BETWEEN THE BEINGS AND THE UNIVERSAL INTELLIGENCE**



OWEVER, man who is gifted with an individual life-consciousness considers the endless space of creation and the unknown countless things which it contains as dumb, dead and without intelligence. Why this seems to be like that to man has a wise reason, which is that his life-consciousness must acquire the full godlike life's independence. For that, by My will,

man is completely separated from the universal life-consciousness with its endless and highest intelligence, so that the life-consciousness of man would find itself in it and by that, as if by the external revealed way, he also would develop and strengthen himself for its eternal independent existence.

[2] However, as long as man tries to acquire his life's independence by himself he hardly has any notion that he is completely surrounded by sheer life and the highest life's intelligence and is also – as far as his body is concerned – permeated by it. Otherwise he would in fact not exist at all. However, when he is ready for it according to God's revealed will, because his inner spirit has completely permeated him, then the whole person is in free contact with the highest life and its enlightened intelligence in the universal infinity of God, without losing his individuality and personality by that. Then he discovers no more a dead and dumb space or dead stones, but then for him everything becomes life and light and intelligence that is aware of itself.

[3] The fact that this is so is in the first place proven to you by My omniscience that has been tried by you many times. Indeed, how could I know endlessly many and all things if the space between Me – that means My individual-personal Being – and for instance the sun or another still much further distanced object, would be without life and intelligence? And secondly, it is also proven by the wisdom of a lot of people who – without leaving their place – know many things concerning something that exists on another place at a great distance and how and what happens to it, or what will happen in the future.

[4] The 7 Egyptians are a vivid example of it. Who informed them that I was here? By this great and universal intelligence they became aware of it in themselves, as well as the way that guided them to this place. If the space between here and Upper-Egypt would be without intelligence, then they could impossibly know what is and what happens here.

[5] The soul of a human being is in his body only separated by a

very thin wall that is in no way connected with the universal life's intelligence, and in his natural condition this is sufficient for him to have mostly no idea of what is and what happens close by, as if it were behind his back. And he does not even understand 1,000 times a 1,000 part of what is happening before his eyes. All this is because of the very thin separating wall mentioned before, that exists between his particular and the universal endless spatial life. If this separating wall would be very impenetrable and extensive, what would such an enormously isolated soul still know of what is existing around him on all sides?

[6] However, the fact that a soul – for reasons only known to Me – is separated by a stronger and denser wall of separation from the universal supreme intelligent godly life, you very well can see with the mentally deficient, the dumb and the so-called stupid. Such a soul is thus only capable of a very poor development or sometimes even not at all.

[7] Why also this is allowed I know very well, and some of My old disciples know it partially also. The rest of you however will come to know it later.

[8] Souls of animals and plants however are not severely separated from the universal godly life in space and are therefore capable, by their inner feeling to do that for which they are destined according to their capacity and arrangement. Every animal knows the food that is good for him and knows where to find it. He has his weapons and knows how to use them without any practice.

[9] So also, the spirit of the plants knows exactly that element in the water, in the air and in the earth that is beneficent for its specific individuality. The spirit of the nature soul of the oak will at no time draw the elements to itself that the cedar needs for its existence. Indeed, who tells a plant to draw only that element that is intended for it? Look, all this is the work of the highest and universal life's intelligence of space. From this, every plant and animal soul draws a special necessary intelligence and is further active according to its instructions.

[10] But if this is so – something that every person can always



clearly see from his experience – then it is obvious that the endless space and everything that it contains is one life and one supreme intelligence. The human soul can only see that unconsciously because he can create his lasting life's independence by his separated intelligence, which is immense. This is something of which no soul of an animal or plant is capable of, and therefore it has no separated existence as such, but only a mixed and therefore, up to the human soul a countless times changeable existence of which it also cannot retain any memory, for after each mixture and changing of being it goes over to another sphere of intelligence.

[11] Even the soul of man as the highest empowered mixture of mineral, plant and animal souls, has no memory of his former forms of existence, because the specific soul elements in the earlier mentioned 3 kingdoms do not have a strictly separated intelligence, but for the benefit of their kind only a kind of intelligence that was taken from the universal godly life in space. Although in a human soul all the countless specific former parts of intelligence were united with each other, and this leads to the fact that the human soul can certainly recognize all things out of himself and can evaluate them intelligently, but a specific remembrance of the former levels of existence is not imaginable or possible because in the human soul there was only one human being that came into existence from the endless many separated souls.

[12] However, when man is completely permeated with the Spirit of life and light, he will perceive such an order in himself, just like I am eternally and always perceiving this in Myself, namely that everything exists out of Me and that I am everything in everything. And do tell me now, friend Lazarus, if you have well understood all that. And all of you are also free to give your ideas about it.”

## 78. ABOUT KNOWING THE FUTURE



**OW Lazarus said:** “Lord and Master, this explanation of Yours exceeds everything what we have heard and seen from You so far. And only now it is becoming clear to me why You, being a Man Yourself, came to us to teach us about God and about ourselves: because we are destined by You to live forever in the highest possible independence, which we however must, want to, and with Your help also will acquire, first by our own activity according to Your teaching and out of our free will. [2] Only now we have a complete correct idea about You and also about ourselves, and we also know why it is necessary to do this or that, for otherwise it would not be possible for any human being to acquire true, eternal life. Now we really know God’s Being and by that also ourselves. Now it is possible to continue on the well-lighted way to life. But how many 1,000 times 1,000 people have no idea of all this and have to continue on the way of destruction? When they possibly can be released from it, just like we now, this only You will know. We can only wish that the souls of those human beings may be released out of this too great tormenting as soon as possible. Because the lighter and freer we feel now by Your mercy, the more and deeper we also feel the misfortune of all those to whom this mercy was not granted.

[3] But what can be done? When You are allowing this Yourself for reasons which are known to You and which certainly are wise, then it also must be good for us. But how long will it still last before all the people on the whole Earth will become one in faith and one of light, and will consider each other as brothers?”

[4] **Then also Agricola said:** “Yes, this is also continuously my concern. Also for me, the truth that becomes more and more clear, really oppresses my heart, because by that I can see all too clearly how far the others, yes almost the whole of humanity, are standing away from it. Lord and Master, You know the future as well as our thoughts and desires. Therefore, You could indicate to us a certain time when surely the greatest part of the human beings will be able

to rejoice in a higher and true light of life.”

[5] I said: “As long as man remains on this Earth and is not completely reborn in the spirit, it is not good at all for him to know much beforehand, and if the future is clearly revealed, it would press down his heart which is not so strong yet and would bring him to despair.

[6] Just imagine how difficult it would be for the people if they would know precisely the time and hour of their dying. They already do not find it pleasant to know that they surely have to die. How much more unpleasant would it be for them to know also the year, the day and the hour on which they can expect the death of their body.

[7] Oh yes, it is quite different for a person who already here has been completely reborn in the spirit of all life and who already possesses his future life in all clearness in himself and can feel it truly and lively. Such a person can know very precisely beforehand the goal and the end of his body because the time on which his heavy load will be taken away from him will not fill him with sadness but only with the greatest joy. However, a common person would certainly become very sad by such sure prospect.

[8] Therefore, you should not search too zealously to know how the future looks like, but be satisfied with what you must know for the salvation of your soul and take also pleasure in the fact that I, in My love and wisdom know these things and will certainly let everything happen the way it certainly will be best at all times for a good or perhaps degenerated humanity, then you will also be able to bear every bad and good future.

[9] When you will however be reborn in the spirit yourselves, you also will be able to look into the future and you will not become sad and weak by that.

[10] But how things will develop in the distant future, I firstly have already shown you quite clearly by the nightly appearance, and still clearer in the explanation of the 2 chapters of the prophet Isaiah. And I will show you even more about the end of the in fact evil human world with which you will also not be too happy. But on

this midnight hour we will leave this subject to rest, for we still have to talk about much more necessary things with each other. So, whoever of you has still something to ask should do that, then I will give him light.”

## 79. AGRIPPA TELLS ABOUT HIS EXPERIENCE WITH A POSSESSED ILLYRIAN



**WHEN Agrippa said:** “Lord and Master, now that during this night You are so generous in giving light, by this opportunity I gladly would like to receive an exact clarification from You concerning an uncommon phenomenon that is happening in people’s life.

[2] Look, I am, just like friend Agricola, someone who knows a lot of things and I am also very experienced in many rare things, and therefore I can talk about many things, which is certainly not possible for everyone. A few years ago I had to go to Illyria<sup>1</sup> in Europe, because of important official duties. This Illyria is a very mountainous country and for the greatest part also wild and hard, and the inhabitants of it are therefore also little developed and they have much similarities with the country that they inhabit. They are hard, little fertile in spirit, but on the other hand they are good in all kinds of legends, especially in all kinds of superstition. And just like their country, they are also very fertile for all kinds of weeds.

[3] Well now, in a little village, where we Romans possess already for considerable time a stronghold, I met a group of people among whom a couple of priests were present. These were working with a man of about 30 years old of whom they told me that he was possessed by an evil spirit for years and that they were trying now to free him. They told me that the man was the son of a prominent family of that region and that the whole house, yes sometimes the whole village was really enduring an infernal torment, and still, it was not the fault of the man since he himself was the one who was

---

<sup>1</sup> Later called Istria in Croatia.

tormented the most.

[4] At first I thought that this was the silliness of those people, and also that it was a smart trick of the priests. I thought that they picked out a man and had used him with the help of his probably learned rage in order to bind the people who were lingering for wonders and to make them to believe more in them. But soon after that, when I could convince myself with all my sense organs that the rage of the man could certainly not be natural because his powerful expressions became so enormous that the so-called works of Hercules were only a child's game compared to it, and I fully began to be convinced myself in the presence of an evil spirit in that man.

[5] The 2 priests who knew very well, based on symptoms that appeared before, what was happening with the unfortunate man, said to the others – only strong men: 'The moment of raging and shouting will soon begin. Therefore, fetter and tie him up immediately now with the strongest ropes and chains.' Because the evil spirit would only leave the man when he perhaps could not break his well-consecrated ropes and chains.

[6] Then the man was tied up with ropes and chains in such a way that a 100 Herculeses would not be able to move. Then the priests and also the other people went back and stood at least 100 paces away from the tied up man and they asked me to do the same. I also did what they advised me.

[7] When we stood less than 20 paces away of the said distance, the man stood up as fast as an arrow with a horrible confused outcry and in one moment he tore the ropes and chains into pieces. Then, horribly crying, he jumped in one stretch from the ground unbelievably high into the air. Besides that, he picked up more than a 100 pounds of heavy stones that he flung all around as if they were light beans. When this raging and shouting had lasted for about 1 hour, the man sank down to the ground completely unconscious and we could come near to him again.

[8] The 2 priests asked him to tell them how he had fared. He did not know anything about his raging however, but he told them only

about a vision in which he discovered that he was in a very beautiful surrounding. During this short story the sound of his voice was very soft, as from a patiently suffering mother, but soon the sound and the language changed. As by a magical power his mouth grew wide open and from a wide opened mouth a strange thundering voice in Greek reached our ears with more or less the following expressions:

[9] ‘O miserable mosquitoes who are like human larvae, do you want to chase me out of this hired house? All Roman armies are not able to do that. Before one stone was ready for the construction of Rome, yes very long before that, I was the famous king Cyaxares<sup>2</sup>, the first with that name. I have defeated the Scythes, I went to war with Lydia. My second daughter Mandane became the wife of the king of the Persians and the mother of the famous Cyrus whose father was called Cambyses. You do not need to know more.

[10] However, this house of flesh, which I am now inhabiting according to my own pleasure and out of which I will not allow you to chase me out, is descendant of my blood, and therefore, I am possessing it rightly. That is why all your efforts to chase me out are useless. I can act in this house of mine as I wish.’

[11] After this remarkable conversation he still uttered a few terrible curses and threats to the 2 priests. He pulled the man a few times to and fro, after which he calmed down, felt very weak and wanted to have something to eat. When he became a little stronger after taking the food, they asked him again if he knew anything of what he had said before. He denied it with his natural soft voice, but he remembered that he slept and that in his dream he was amidst white clothed young men.

[12] Furthermore I spoke separately with the priests and the still living parents of the man and advised them that one should in a good way kill such a person, since then the evil spirit will have to leave his house. However, then they all assured me that this was

---

<sup>2</sup> King of Media (624 to 584 BC).

practically impossible and that the life of someone who would try such a thing would be in the greatest of danger. Someone tried it before but he came back seriously injured. Soon after that, I left the unhappy village and I well remembered this true incident that I saw. I often told this to wise people, also here to the Jews, but there was never any good explanation.

[13] They also told me a lot about people who were possessed by devils or evil spirits, and that it is very difficult to cure the people who are suffering from it, but nobody knew to tell me who such devils or evil spirits actually are and how they come to nest themselves into a poor and weak human being. And as far as his natural life is concerned they totally want to control him and are also able to. Oftentimes we can see children who are miserably tormented by evil spirits.

[14] Lord and Master, what is behind all this? Deceit on the part of such an unfortunate person is certainly not possible because what I have seen with the Illyrian, deceit was certainly equally as far distanced as one end of the world is distanced from the other.”

## **80. THE LORD EXPLAINS THE NATURE OF POSSESSION**



SAID: “Your experience is true, and I Myself have set several people free of such diseases in the land of the Jews and also with the Greeks. Indeed, there are such people who are possessed for a certain time by evil spirits, but only for what their body is concerned without being able to harm the soul of such a possessed person in the least.

[2] The evil spirits who possess the flesh of a person are actually souls of deceased people who once lived a wicked life in this world, and this while they knew very well that their actions were bad.

[3] Possession only happens with people whose faith in a God and in the immortality of the soul has disappeared.

[4] These incidents which are happening during times when faith is continuously diminishing and which look very serious, are

allowed, so that the unbelievers are receiving by that a strong warning to show them that their unbelief is useless and that there exist a certain continuance of life of a person's soul after the falling away of the body, and certainly also a God who is also in the beyond very well capable to chastise the wickedness and the foolishness of the people.

[5] Despite his evil resistance, the wicked spirit who possesses the flesh of a person, experiences humiliations that he can hardly bear, and then it becomes gentler and lighter within himself. Those who witness such conditions are as if they were pulled away with force from their all too materialistic and dark behavior. They begin to think about the spiritual, and their way of life improves.

[6] And so, this very serious looking case that is occurring among the people in times of the greatest lack of faith has definitely also good sides, as you certainly have noticed with your Illyrians.

[7] The 2 priests who formerly knew how to bind the people to themselves with all kinds of magical deceits and who did not believe in anything themselves, but who still gathered important treasures, changed their mind totally through this possessed person and they desisted for the greatest part from their deceits, for the evil spirit thundered to them already many times that they were very miserable cheaters and that he was much better than they who in their powerlessness wanted to fight against him.

[8] The 2 priests believe now without questioning that the soul continues to live after the death of the body and they believe now in one God, for on several occasions the spirit said in their face that he himself as an evil spirit is much more important than 10,000 legions of their imagined idols with whose help they wanted to drive him out, but that there was only one true God to whom he would obey if He would order him to leave the fleshly house.

[9] The other people heard this also, and because of that, also their faith has changed and improved, and for this reason such a possession is not always that very bad as if unjustly allowed by God and as human reason is imagining.



[10] And possession never occurs at all with people who have a living faith full of light, because the soul of man and also the spirit within are penetrating the body in such a way that no strange and perhaps also evil spirit can penetrate a pure flesh that is permeated of spirit. But when the soul of a person has become dark, carnal and materialistic, and by that is also afraid and scared, sick and weak, so that he cannot offer any resistance to a strange intruder, then it can easily happen that the evil souls, who, after withdrawing out of their body and are mostly residing in those lower regions of this Earth where people of their kind are living in the flesh and are performing their evil practices, are sometimes penetrating into the body of a weak person. Then they mostly are residing in the most sensual lower part of the body and are trying to express themselves outwardly as strange and always evil spirits by means of the flesh of the possessed one.

[11] Yet, as far as the soul is concerned, the possessed one never suffers any harm, as I have directly indicated since the beginning. And so, possession, as also already said, is not as bad as people think.

[12] However, when you will encounter such possessed people in the future, you should lay your hands upon them. Then the evil spirits will leave the possessed one. If you encounter however someone who is possessed by a persistent spirit, threaten the spirit, then he will obey immediately the one who has seriously threatened him in My name and in full faith. For wherever My teaching is proclaimed by you to the people, it is not necessary that also the devils from the flesh of a possessed one have to establish the completely shattered faith of the people. Where angels are teaching, the devils must be driven away.

[13] Concerning that Illyrian possessed person however, and also his community, he is still alive and is now freed from his affliction, and his community believes now in one – although still unknown – God, as well as in the immortality of the soul. And when someone of you will soon go there in My name, he will have it easy with the people and also in the wide environment of that

country to convert the people to the true light of faith and destroy their superstition. Did you, Agrippa, understand this very well?"

## 81. THE LOCATION OF THE SPIRIT WORLD



**GRIPPA** said: “Lord and Master, this is now clear to me, as it certainly will also be for the others, and I thank you for this light. But I still like to make a small remark, and that is if You would like to indicate where in relation to the Earth, the actual spirit world is located. Although there was a little spark in Your words about it, but I still could not completely make it out. If You think it is right, I would like to ask You to give me also in this respect that which is suitable.”

[2] **I** said: “Even though the whole spirit world – as I already have explained a few times – has absolutely no longer anything to do with space and time of this material judged and therefore not free world, the space as an exterior cover is finally still the carrier of all Heavens and all spirit worlds, because they cannot be found in any other way somewhere outside the endless space of creation. And so, in order to speak clearly and for you understandably, there also must be spatial places in which the spirit worlds are as it were, located at a certain place, although the place of the area is as little interesting to namely a perfect spirit as now this Mount of Olives is interesting to you when you want to imagine Rome or Athens, because for the spirit in that form, there is no certain space nor measured time.

[3] But concerning the so-called individual being of a spirit: he can still not – as little as I can – be completely outside of space and time. And so, also the souls of those who have died in this material world are in a certain local space, although, namely the souls whose life is not completed, have no notion of it, just as little as when you are in a dream in which you are perhaps really feeling comfortable and even active now in this and then again in another region, without changing a hair’s breadth the material-spatial place where you as personal individual are present.

[4] However, you want to know from Me the actual, as it were fixed place where especially the souls are living who after the death of their body did not complete their life, and I also want to tell you this faithfully. So listen to Me and understand well what I will tell you about this.

[5] When a man during his life has felt a special love for this or that place on the material world, then as a deceased soul he will also stay in that place, often for many hundreds of years, and he also will inwardly become aware of it by way of the spiritual correspondences, although it still will be not clear.

[6] Thus, wherever on this Earth you have a place, you also will have a place for the world of the spirits, which in fact is of course not a material but a spiritual place, for it exists out of a certain fantasy of the spirits by means of their will.

[7] So you can travel all around through such a world that is created by you. However, as individual you will stay invariably on one and the same material place.

[8] Let us take for instance a person who has a great desire to know better the moon, the sun and also the stars. When the soul of such a person lies off his body, his material place is already there where his love has drawn him towards it and placed him in it. There he soon will come in contact with the spirits of these worlds and will think very actively and deeply about the ideas and studies that are common there.

[9] However, if a soul is already here completely permeated with the love for God, then his material-individual place of existence in the vicinity of the Earth as nurturing place for the education of the children of God will not change, but through My intervention he will nevertheless – according to the continuous needs of his intelligence and the by that resulting happiness – be able to travel throughout the whole of infinity without having to change a hair's breadth the material-spatial place of his individual being, just like Me also am not changing in the spirit and am still present everywhere at the same time in the whole of infinity.

[10] More and profounder things I cannot tell you about this now.

However, when you will be reborn in the spirit, more things will come clear to you as bright as the sun. Did you understand this well now?"

[11] **Then Agrippa and also many others said:** "Lord and Master, we thank You for this explanation that was very necessary for all of us because we all have seen and observed possessed people of all kind and nature on several occasions and we did not know how to explain this matter other than that such unfortunates were possessed by real devils and therefore were also their prey when they were not able to free themselves.

[12] With such an idea of possession it was necessary for us, either to consider the possessed one as a very great sinner – being cursed by God already in this world – or we secretly had to shrug our shoulders about God's love and highest justice, of which we really could not be blamed. And more in particular when we could convince ourselves in every respect about the blameless conduct of the possessed one as well as the devoutness of his parents. But now this case has assumed a totally new aspect, and we are extremely happy that through Your grace we were able to put matters straight."

[13] **I said:** "Well now, this is good. If you also have clarity in this, then we still have 4 hours until the morning to still discuss a lot of things with one another and to make things clear. If for someone among you there is still something that is not clear, let him ask aloud, then he will receive a good and clear light, for I want to give you to understand the mystery of God's Kingdom."

## 82. THE NATURE OF SATAN



OW again, **one of the Pharisees** who was converted in **Emmaus** came forward and said: "Lord and Master, we know now well what the truth is concerning those who are possessed and who actually are the evil spirits by whom here and there the body of a human being is taken into possession. But nevertheless, in the Scripture it is explicitly spoken about the true

extremely evil devils and about their prince, Satan, and at the same time it is said that Satan, who is also called Lucifer, and a countless great number of angels who chose his side, were rejected by God and were thrown into the eternal fire of Hell.

[2] So it is also written that Satan in the form of a snake made the first human beings to fall, and how God has allowed him to tempt the pious Job.

[3] How is it according to the new teaching with Satan and his subordinate devils? Who and where is Satan, and who and where are the devils?

[4] Since it is allowed for us to understand the complete mystery of God's Kingdom, we also must have a clear view concerning this. Therefore, would You like to be so merciful to give us an understandable explanation about this?"

[5] **I said: "I already have said and explained a lot about this, and My old disciples know what they can expect. But because you are still a newcomer by My side, you surely may ask what was still not made known to you. So listen.**

[6] **Look, that which endless space contains as matter is judged and therefore fixed by the power of God's will. If this would not be the case, there would be no sun, no moon, no Earth and certainly not any created being in the great endless space. Then there would be only God, contemplating His great thoughts and ideas.**

[7] **However, God had placed His thoughts already since eternity as it were outside of Himself, and by His almighty will He has provided them with a body. These embodied thoughts and ideas of God are however strictly speaking no bodies, but they are spiritual things that are judged, and vessels for the ripening of an independent being. Thus, they are created beings, intended to exist continuously forever out of themselves and out of their own power, next to Me, the Creator who is visible to them.**

[8] **All creatures, as judged spiritual beings are, compared to the already pure and free spiritual, still impure, unripe and therefore not yet good. And compared to the spiritual, pure and good they**

can still be regarded as bad and evil as such.

[9] Thus, by ‘Satan’ you should understand the whole material creation in general, and by ‘devil’ the separated specific parts thereof.

[10] When a person in this world knows God’s will and lives according to it, he raises himself out of the imprisonment that is inherent to all that which is created and passes over to God’s freedom that is inherent to that which is not created.

[11] However, a person who does not want to believe in a God and consequently does not want to act according to His will that is revealed to man, sinks more and more and deeper into the created material and becomes spiritual impure, evil and maliciously judged, and consequently a devil. Because all that which is merely created and judged is – as already said – in relation to the pure and free spiritual which is not created, impure, bad and wicked. However, not because God could have created something impure, bad and wicked, but simply and solely because in the first place it necessarily had to be something that is created for the sake of existence, gifted with intelligence and power of action and at the same time with a free will, and in the second place because, in order to acquire independence in himself, he independently has to make use of that which was created and given and must as it were make it his own property.

[12] For God however, there does not exist anything that is impure, bad or evil, because for the pure everything is pure. Everything that God has created is good, and therefore for God there is no Satan, no devil and consequently also no Hell. Only that which has been created as such is all that, as long as it has to remain something created and judged and as long as he finally, in possession of the free will, wants to stay either good or bad.

[13] So when it is stated in the Scripture that Satan in the form of a snake has seduced the first human couple, it actually means to say that the first human couple who knew God’s will very well, have allowed themselves to be enchanted by the material world and that the lust and the voice of their judged flesh said: ‘We want to see

what will happen when we will act contrary to the well-known will of God. For God Himself has given us freedom to act. Therefore we cannot lose anything of our insight, but only win. Because God surely knows what can happen when we act freely. We however do not know it. Therefore, let us act only once according to our will, then we will know by experience that which God knows alone.’

[14] And look, then both of them ate from the forbidden tree of knowledge by way of wanting to experience it themselves, and by that they sunk one degree deeper into their judged matter, which regarding to the free life of the spirit is also called ‘death’.

[15] After that, they realized very well that in their flesh dwells the bondage of judgment and death that, because of a growing love for the world, can also bury the free soul in judgment and bondage. And so, they lost the pure paradise that consisted of the full union of the soul with his spirit, and then they could not find it completely back on their own, because their soul was wounded by the sting of matter and it took a lot of effort to maintain himself above the judgment of the created bondage, as this is now the case with all the people. And therefore I came into this world, namely to show the people again the true way of life and to give them back the lost paradise through My teaching.

[16] This was also the same with Job. In an earthly way Job was an extremely happy man and possessed many things. He was however also a wise man and very dedicated to God, living strictly according to the law. However, his extreme wealth made his flesh more lusting and made high demands to the spirit in him.

[17] The judged spirit of the flesh said in a way to the soul: ‘I want to see if by my earthly pleasures and sorrow I cannot draw you away from your God and if I cannot exhaust your patience in such a way that I can put you under my coercive judgment.’

[18] This gave Job a mighty battle to fight, because on the one hand all earthly pleasures were at his disposal, of which he indeed enjoyed, but they did not rule over his soul and he remained united with the spirit.

[19] Since in this way the evil spirit of matter could not achieve

anything with the soul, his soul was tempted by all kinds of physical miseries that are symbolically described in the book. But Job endured them all with patience, although he now and then grumbled and was lamenting his misery. But he finally always recognized, that before, God has given him everything, has taken it away and was able to give it back to him, and even more than what He has taken away from him, because of the full strengthening of his soul in the spirit.

[20] Now, when this is so, then who was Satan who tempted the pious Job so much? It was the judged spirit of his flesh. This means the different lusts thereof.

[21] But a certain personal primordial Satan and primordial devils did in reality not exist anywhere else except in the judged worldly matter of all kinds. However, the reason why Satan and the devils were presented by the old wise men by all kinds of dreadful visions is that the soul had to be able to imagine through all kinds of terrible images what kind of misery a free life must suffer when he will allow himself to be recaptured by the judgment of matter.

### **83. ABOUT THE PERSONALITY OF SATAN**



MYSELF caused Satan to appear in an image for My first disciples and they were extremely frightened. Something similar happened also a few times with the first fathers of this Earth. But during that time no explanation in words was given because the elders who were wise from the spirit, understood very well the symbolic image by way of the inner correspondences and therefore they said: 'It is terrible to fall into the hands of the judging God.' That means to say: it is terrible for a soul, who has already come to complete self-consciousness to let himself be captured again by the unchangeable law of the coercing judgment of the godly will in matter.

[2] The fact that this is described as something terrible for the soul, can be learned by everyone from the experience of a dying person who did not attain to the complete rebirth of the spirit.



[3] Because why is such a soul so much afraid of the death of his body? Because he – still being entangled in the coercing judgment of the body – thinks that he has to die together with the body. That this is the case, you easily can see with all those who hardly believe, or not at all, in a continuance of life of the soul after the death of the body, because their soul is completely or for the greatest part in the judgment of his flesh, and consequently he also has to experience its death as long as by My will he is not completely separated from it.

[4] Since you hopefully well understand now how things are with Satan and his devils, it will also become clear to you that things cannot be different with Hell. It is just like Satan who is in himself the eternal coercive judgment, thus the world and the matter thereof.

[5] And why is Satan also called a prince of darkness and the lie? Because all matter is not that which it seems to be. And he who in his love will grab it and allows himself to be captured by it, is then also clearly residing in the kingdom of the lie and, regarding the truth, in the kingdom of darkness.

[6] He who for instance loves too much the so-called treasures of the kingdom of the dead matter and keeps them for what they seem to be and not for what they truthfully are, is by that already residing in the kingdom of the lie, because his love – the foundation of his life – is as it were completely blinded and sunken down in matter and will have great difficulty to raise himself up again out of such a night towards the light of the full truth.

[7] However, he who only considers gold as a corresponding form of expression which represents the good of the love in God, like pure silver represents the truth of the wisdom in God, knows therefore also the real value of gold and silver and is thus residing in the Kingdom of the truth, and his soul is not entangled in the treacherous appearance of the judgment thereof.

[8] So also, with the elders and all prophets, gold, silver and the different kinds of precious stones had only the true meaning. But as matter however, they did not have any value, and for this reason

they also could not become a danger for a soul. Through the discernment of the true value of the matter they discovered also easily and quickly for what it could be suitable and be useful and they derived the true benefit from it.

[9] However, when in course of time the people bestowed any value to the matter because of their glitter and nice appearance, they passed over to its judgment, became spiritually blind, hard, greedy, stingy, untruthful, quarrelsome, deceitful, proud, malicious and lusting for war and conquest, and they therefore fell into idolatry and paganism, and consequently also in the actual Hell out of which they could not be delivered without Me.

[10] For this reason I had to cover Myself in matter and by that in the judgment, and I have to break through it, so that by that I will become the entrance gate to eternal life for all the people who had fallen if they want to enter life through this gate. Therefore, I am also the door to life and Life itself. Whoever will not enter inside through Me, will not attain to life in the light of eternal truth and freedom, but will remain captured in the judgment of matter.

[11] Now there is another question that comes up by itself, which sounds like this: are there really no personal Satan and personal devils?

[12] And I say: Oh yes, they exist here indeed, still living in the flesh, and even more so in the big world in the beyond, who always intent to exert a bad influence in the world on this side, and this on one hand because of the raw nature spirits who because of their predestined ripening still remain in all kinds of matter. And further also directly by secret whisperings, arousing and enticements. They notice very well the different weaknesses with men and their inclinations, control and stimulate them to burning passions.

[13] And once a weakness of a person has become a burning passion, he is already completely in the condition of the judgment of matter and its evil spirits, and then it is difficult for him to loosen himself from it.

[14] Satan is the total sum of the total judged matter, and

concerning his personality, strictly speaking it exists nowhere, but they have to be considered as an assembly of devils of all kinds, not only of this Earth but of all worlds in the endless space of creation, as also all the numerous many shell globes all together are finally representing an immense great Cosmic Man, according to My explanation that I already have given you.

[15] Of course, on a smaller scale, an assembly of devils of a celestial body is also a Satan, and on the smallest scale every separate devil is it also in itself.

[16] However, as long as there were no men on a celestial body, there also were no personal devils, but only judged and unfermented spirits in all the matter of a celestial body. Matter is everything that can be observed with your sense organs.

[17] But you also can trust that now no devils on any other celestial body are more evil and more malicious than precisely in and on this Earth. If it would be allowed to them, they would terribly harm the Earth and its inhabitants, but they are not allowed to. And in order that the devils would not be able to do that, they are for this reason also afflicted with complete blindness and consequently also with the greatest foolishness. And their assemblies look like the guarded institutions on this Earth in which the fools and madmen are detained, so that they cannot harm other people.

[18] From what has been said now, all of you can easily realize with your complete mind and enlightened reason how things are with Satan and his devils. And it is no more necessary for you to ask anything further concerning this. And say now, scribe, if you have well understood all this.”

## 84. WHERE THE PERSONAL DEVILS ARE RESIDING



**THEN the scribe said:** “Yes, Lord and Master, for You have spoken now so clearly and detailed about this matter as can be, and by that You have shown to us orderly and in detail how You have managed Your creation. And so, all this must be completely clear to us. That means to say, as far as it can be made clear for our still always-limited human mind, because knowledge alone is by far still not the same as being able to perceive everything, but it is sufficient for us because we thoroughly understand that which we know.

[2] But since You have now already told us so much about these difficult to understand things, I still ask You now to indicate to us a little further about the dwelling place of the personal devils, so that we can avoid that, because when a person or also a whole group would reside on such a place, they finally could end up very badly. Please be therefore so merciful to explain this to us a little more.”

[3] **I said:** “You still think too materialistic. What difference does it make if spiritual devilish personalities are mainly residing on this or on another place?

[4] As long as your soul out of Me is pure and strong, then he can be in the worst company of devils without they being able to harm him in the least. Because a pure and out of Me strong soul resides in the midst of numerous legions of personal devils and is still entirely in the Kingdom of the Heavens, which does not consist of outer display, but is within the heart of the perfect soul, for in this way the soul becomes a creator, similar to Me, of his blissful abode where eternally no personal devil will be able to come in.

[5] And so also already on this Earth, it is unimportant for a pure and out of Me strong soul to know where a little or big dwelling place for personal devils is located, because the pure and out of Me strong soul carries his Heaven everywhere in and with himself, just like the personal devil carries his Hell or his judgment.

[6] But because we are talking about this subject anyway, I want

to show you more precisely the places which are specifically inhabited by personal devils. So listen.

[7] Look at the people in those public houses and buildings where much deceitful business is carried out like for instance now in the temple and in many other business houses. These are also special habitations for the many personal devils. So also the houses in which all kinds of fornication, prostitution and adultery are committed are also special habitations where personal devils are residing. So also those mountains and holes where people with haste and lust are digging for gold, silver and other treasures of the Earth are places where personal devils are residing in great numbers. So also the forests and holes where thieves, robbers and murderers are residing. So also the army camps and battle fields, the roads of the merchant caravans and the rivers, lakes and seas where a great profitable business is carried out.

[8] And further, the landed properties and pieces of land, pastures, fields, vineyards and forests of hard-hearted heathens, as well as of the rich, stingy and hard-hearted Jews are special favorite dwelling places for personal devils. And also the air above and in the indicated dwelling places, and the fire, the clouds and the rain, and also all idolatry temples and false oracles.

[9] Further, personal devils can be found in great numbers where you can see great earthly presentations of pomp and with that the still related pride.

[10] However, on places that are not inhabited by men and are also not polluted by their sins, the personal devils are not residing, except in the case when a caravan of people, lusting for worldly gain, would travel through it. Because of those people, the personal devils would then soon feel well at home.

[11] Now friend, you have heard that which you still wanted to hear from Me and which you wanted to know for yourself.

[12] And for which reason the personal devils are fond of the named places is obvious for the one who has somehow understood what has preceded, and does not need any further explanation.”

## 85. UNDERSTANDING THE REASONS FOR THE PRIMORDIAL CREATION



**HE scribe** said: “But how can those devils become aware of it? Can they see this Earth and also us people, and also what we are doing?”

[2] **I** said: “Oh yes, but only that which is similar to them. I tell you: also the malicious vultures are quickly gathering where there is a good tasting bait.

[3] **I** alone know since eternity what is necessary to make from a thought out of Me a free being, and this with the fullest godly independence. Therefore, I am also the only One to know what is necessary to entirely accomplish this supreme work. If it concerns death, judgment, human being or angel: in My eyes, all this is for the accomplishment of the main goal of My love and wisdom one and the same. Because, you know, the Eternal has always enough time for it. Surely, David said that a 1,000 years for God are hardly 1 day, but I say to you, who are now My scribe and friend: a 1,000 times a 1,000 years is for Me hardly 1 single moment.

[4] Look, you are existing at this moment, and numerous times of myriads times myriads of creations like these are already finished behind us according to the natural chronology. How could you blame Me that I have allowed that you have come to birth only now during this youngest time? And further, what reproach could those make Me who I will allow to be born after eons times eons long times and eternities?

[5] For I am Lord over My eternal thoughts and ideas, and I can bring them to a self-conscious life whenever I want. Because eternally I am under no law, for I am since primordial eternity the law Myself. And so, in moral matters I can issue a law that comes only from Me and which lies in My will, how and whenever I want to do this out of My love and My wisdom.

[6] Who else except Me can foresee that? And who can force Me and make Me to act, except I Myself out of My eternal order?

[7] My eternal complete free will is the law over My thoughts and

ideas that have indeed since eternity only their visible existence in Me. However, if according to My love it would please Me to bring them to a firm and independent existence, then My wisdom places My will as law over My thoughts and ideas, and then those become realities, as if outside of My Being. And further, they have to continue to exist as external independent realities as long as My love and wisdom allows My will as law of all laws to rule expertly and efficiently over them.

[8] And look, so is also the survival of the devils a law that has been placed in them, besides the still personal free will. As long as they do not want to acknowledge Me as the One who I was since eternity, still am and eternally will be, so long will My compelling law also not move away from them, for if I would take away My compelling law, then their independent existence would come an end.

[9] If an already independent existing being improves his life out of his free will now or only after a for you unimaginable long time, and turns to the Kingdom of the truth, is for Me the same. And I will not change My eternal order one hair's breadth for this reason. However, he who wants to have it differently can also do that, because all means are given to him for that.

[10] Since I have indicated to you now where the dwelling places of the evil and malicious souls – who are actually the personal devils – are, you should avoid them when you still feel rather weak, because there is still a danger on such places for him who is weak. He who exposes himself to danger while he is still weak, will also easily perish in danger, or at least he will not easily escape without any harm.

[11] Therefore, take care that you should not covet all the impure and unripe things of this world, because you are now already on the last step of the inner life's completion, and all that is already behind you. Strife always to go forward and no more towards that which is unripe that lies behind you. Then you will easily and quickly reach the true goal of life and you will feel no more desire to look even one more time to that which is unripe that lies behind

you. Did you all understand this well now?"

[12] **The scribe said:** "Lord and Master, also this has now become clear to us, and also concerning this we know now what we can expect. But, among the people, there are still so many appearances about which we still have not much clarity. So for instance I myself know in the country of the Jews several old strongholds and old houses that, maybe already since a few centuries are no more inhabited by people. These places are often haunted so terribly that no human being – no matter how courageous he may be – would dare to come near, not even from a great distance. And woe to the one who – maybe by coincidence or one who does not know about the horrifying situation – would come close to such places, because that person will be badly seized. And if someone would even go on purpose to such a place, it will still be much worse. Well now, such places, which are actually not so rare, are already for many years not visited by any great sinner, neither by one nor by the other. And still, no one can visit them. What is the meaning of all that?"

[13] **I said:** "Oh My friend, it is not always what you think, but mostly something much different. Let such infamous strongholds and farms be surrounded by a group of courageous soldiers, then I can assure you that by such occasion your otherwise so dangerous looking appearances will retreat in such a way that no soldier will in the least notice their eventual existence.

[14] **Although, here and there are places where souls of people are residing who have deceased a long time ago, and now and then they are catching the attention of bypassing people in one way or another. These are souls who during their physical life were too much in love with their earthly possession, and in order to increase it, they also committed many injustices. Such souls who have become at the same time very materialistic, remain therefore after the falling away of their body on these places that they have loved above everything else and were precious to them during their physical life, and this often as long as every trace of their mostly so precious possession has become lost. Only then they come more**



and more to their senses in the beyond because they begin to realize in themselves that all the earthly and timely possession and idle thing is and was an empty illusion.

[15] But such souls can never degenerate into a too tangible malice, and their extremely limited and powerless existence cannot inflict any moral injury to anybody. On the contrary, the fact that now and then they are manifesting themselves, often works very well on the unbelief of many worldly person, who because of this, becomes a believer and changes his worldly life, because he becomes aware of an existence of the souls of men after the death of the body, which to him does not seem to be so particularly good and blissful.

## 86. ABOUT PRAYING FOR THE DECEASED



THUS, such spirits – although they are not of a good and pure kind – cannot become dangerous for man, and it is good to pray for such souls. Because the prayer of a soul who is filled with love and compassion and in full trusting love in Me has a good influence on such truly poor souls in the beyond, for it forms a certain element of life's ether around them in which they can see as in a mirror their faults and shortcomings, are improving themselves and by that they can come more easily to the light of life.

[2] And I am offering you this possibility Myself, so that you can truly benefit your deceased brothers and sisters.

[3] But then how should you pray for them?

[4] This is quite easy. When you are praying, you should not be of the opinion that by that you can stir Me up to greater mercy, since I truly am endless more merciful than all the best and most loving people of the whole world together. But submit faithfully the gospel to them, out of the true foundation of love of your heart – thus in your heart. Then they will hear it and will also conform themselves to it. And in this way you will also announce the gospel to those who are truly poor of spirit, which will be a great

benefit for them.

[5] All the other kind of prayer and rattling off of prayers does not help a deceased person in the least, but will rather harm him, because he only will be offended when he hears it, since such prayers for the souls of the deceased have to be paid with great offerings, especially as this is the custom with the Pharisees according to the law.

[6] The manner of praying for the deceased and the caring for their spiritual poverty – like I have shown you just now – is certainly a fruitful blessing for them. On the other hand, a costly paid-for prayer of the Pharisees is for them a curse, from which they quickly are fleeing away and which they deeply despise.

[7] Do remember and observe this well as My good advice given to you, for by that you will acquire true, great, mighty and grateful friends in the great world on the other side, who will not ever leave you, neither on this nor on the other side if ever you would be in need. Such friends will then be your true protective spirits and will always be concerned for the well being of their benefactors.

[8] But you can only acquire them when you are caring and are anxious about them in the manner that I have indicated to you. For that, you do not have to wait for old strongholds and farms, but you always can do that for as many deceased souls as you can think of, because your faith, your true love and compassion and the truth out of Me are reaching still endlessly much farther than the great spheres of the great Cosmic Man that was described to you. Because you are not only My created beings, but you are for Me – your Father – endlessly much more, and the great Man of Creation is not even a tangible point of life of existence in the smallest nerve of life of your little toe. All this is of course only spiritual or from the point of view of the deepest truth.

[9] Truly, I say to you: a great influence is intended for you of which even you yourselves will only perfectly know the scope of it when you will live and work with Me in My eternal Kingdom in one Father's house. Because now, all this is only a wonderful dream to you, just like with children of pious parents. However,

what I am telling you here is deep and godly truth.

[10] As I am possessing all power and sovereignty in Heaven and on this tiny Earth, so also all of you who believe in Me and love Me above all should perfectly possess it, because the children of a Father may not be less then endlessly perfect, just like their Father is.

[11] Mostly, it looks quite different with people on this Earth, especially when the father is spoiling his children too much, but truly, this is absolutely never the case with Me, for I know since eternity what My children need.

[12] Well now, I have given you a little foretaste, so that you should know who I really am, and who you are and who you actually still have to become much more. Therefore, act always according to My word. Then you will easily reach that what you should reach according to My Fatherly words, because a surer and more powerful guarantee than what I am Myself, the whole of eternity and infinity does not have. But, as said, remember it very well from the deepest bottom of your life, otherwise I have said it to you in vain.

[13] Do not look for any reward in this world for the little sacrifices that you are giving Me, for truly, then you would not be My children but children of this world and Earth which is a bad footstool for My love and My earnest. However, perform all the things that you do out of true, inner love for Me, your Father, then I will surely know with what I have to prepare a true joy in return for My beloved children.

[14] Truly, truly, I say to you: no human eye has ever seen, no human ear has ever heard and no human sense organ has ever felt what I am preparing for My children who truly love Me with a simple heart as their Father.

[15] But also this I am saying to all of you: I absolutely will not have Myself be dragged along next to this world. Because it will be completely one thing, or completely the other, for such halfway is something that belongs to the dark heathens, and therefore it also produces bad fruits.

[16] Because what use will it be to a person if he would possess all the treasures of the world but thereby would suffer great harm to his soul? Therefore, always be concerned about treasures that cannot be eaten up by moths and cannot be corroded by rust, then that will always be the best for you.

[17] So remember also this advice very well and observe it, then already on this Earth you will have a good existence, as well as the other people who will believe your words. All the rest has to pine away, so that the flesh would not become too proud. For I am the only One as Lord, and I am always doing what I want according to My eternal wisdom. Even if the world would scream for murder and fire, as strong and as loud as it wants, once about this and then again about that, and I will never listen to its vain bawling.

[18] But that which My true children and friends will present Me, I will also listen to and will easily and quickly correct that which is evil. However, all that which is called and which is 'world' must from now on be chastised a 100 times more than has ever been the case since the beginning of the world. Also this is My word, and the time will teach the people that I have not spoken out these words in vain.

[19] Woe to all those who are lusting for the world and are opposing My will. Because this Earth is a cradle for My children, and these cannot become capable without the rod of chastisement. And when softer warnings do not help, then sharper and more serious ones will be used, which will then be My concern. But now we still have to finish part of your question.

## 87. ABOUT THE RUINS WHERE GHOSTS ARE



Y scribe and friend, in your question you have mentioned spirits who are terribly aggressive in old strongholds and farms, and I tell you that there – particularly in these times – it is indeed like that, but I also can give you by that the fullest assurance that these are absolutely no dangerous spirits but often very dangerous and throughout evil men who in cooperation with pagan magicians – also Jewish ex-priests and dismissed or resigned Essenes – are playing their evil game. These men have into their service all kinds of well-paid evil rabble, and through robbery, murder and all kinds of other truly devilish deceitful tricks they gather great treasures. And the old strongholds with their subterranean tunnels are for them extremely suitable working places for their activities.

[2] When an unsuspecting person comes close to these truly hellish nests, then his presence will in no way be tolerated, so that the deceit would not come to light. But through their evil tricks they frighten him so much that he himself becomes then the best protector and defender of such a hellish nest, for he tells it to 1,000 of other people from mouth to mouth and all of them are thinking that this is something terribly supernatural, and not one of those 1,000 dares then ever to come in the vicinity of such a truly hellish nest. But as I have already made the remark directly at the beginning, just let a well armed Roman army come close to such an infamous stronghold of spooky ghosts, then the spirits will not move, but will flee away as fast as they can through their secret subterranean tunnels.

[3] I tell you: in such strongholds and farms that were mentioned by you, only few souls of men who have become truly devilish and who have laid down their bodies already a long time ago are residing there, but rather there are often a greater number of souls of people who are still in the flesh and are living their more than devilish evil life and are usually much worse than the absolute devils in the beyond. I think that by this explanation this matter is

now clear to you. Or if ever you are still in doubt about any other thing, let us hear it.”

[4] Then the Roman **Agricola** came forward again and said: “Aha, that is how it is with such nests? It is good that I have heard this now from the mouth of the most truthful Witness. I will know how to drive these kind of spooky ghosts out. Also with us in Europe I know a great number of such infamous nests, and to the practices of such spirits of flesh and blood will soon be made an end.”

[5] **I** said: “This will be much more difficult for you there as would be the case here in the country of the Jews, because your influential pagan priests are especially interestingly involved in that evil game. As long as My teaching that has been given to you now will not have made good progress, by violence there is not much that can be done against the European spooky nests. But the best way against such extremely deceitful nonsense is the information that you can give to the better part of the people, because once they will very well know what these things really are, then the rabble will soon know it also and that is then the quickest and most important method to drive such evil spirits of flesh and blood out.

[6] He who wants to catch birds should not start to hit directly into the bushes with clubs, but he should first spread out the nets and only then throw the clubs into the bushes, then a lot of birds will catch themselves at the same time into the nets.

[7] When certain chief principals of a worldly government are too closely connected with its deceitful priesthood, then in the first place, open force cannot be used with success, but in a later stage it surely can be well used.

[8] But here in the country of the Jews – namely in Galilee – I Myself have destroyed a couple of such deceitful places of which Cyrenius will be able to tell you more. Nevertheless, there are still a few left, of which I will soon take care, just as I also have done with the wicked temple of idolatry in Samosata at the Euphrates.

[9] But with you in Europe where there is still a deep paganism,

there is nothing else that you can do against such a spooky work except that which I have indicated to you.

[10] One day Europe will largely exceed Asia in faith, but now it is generally still very much rude and unripe, because it is still too deeply involved in the darkest paganism, which it will not be able to give up completely, even after many hundreds of years. Yet, there will be many who will be standing in the fullest truth in My name, but who will also be more or less persecuted by the pagans. However, once I will set out a great judgment over all the heathens, no matter which, and that will then also be the finishing stroke for all heathens. But now, we still will let the scribe speak.

[11] Do tell Me now, My scribe and friend, what else you do not understand. For as a true scribe you also must understand the Scripture completely, and so I am giving now to you and to the others the opportunity to receive from Me the right light about all that which is still unclear to all of you.

[12] **The scribe said:** “Lord and Master, by Your goodness and mercy, everything which seemed to me the most important has now already been cleared up. But since You Yourself have now made mention of an extremely great judgment over all the heathens, would You still not like to indicate the time more precisely when all this will happen.


[13] It is true that also Daniel and Isaiah have talked about it in obscure images, and You Yourself have explained 2 complete chapters of Isaiah that were referring to it, as well as the certain ruin of Jerusalem, but You have not mentioned anything special about a certain time. Since we have now heard already so many things of You, would You not like to tell us about it, more precisely about the last judgment over the heathens of the whole world, as well as of what kind of judgment it will be and which signs will precede it. For without certain warnings You never will bring a judgment over the people.”

[14] **I said:** “My dear scribe and friend. You truly have asked a very good question, and I will answer this for all of you, but you

must not confuse the paganism of that time of which I was speaking with the paganism now in this time. The temples of idolatry of the present time will indeed have been destroyed a long time ago, but instead of them, numerous other ones will be build by the antichrist, and this even in My name. And their priests will let themselves be exceedingly honored as My replacements on Earth, and they will make effort to gather all worldly treasures. They will fatten themselves, but the people will be in great need spiritually and physically.

[15] Look, when that paganism will predominate, then the great judgment will soon be poured out over the new harlot of Babylon. I will give you more details later, but let us now take some more wine.”

## 88. THE MEANING OF BREAD AND WINE. ABOUT THE CEREMONIES.

MMEDIATELY **Lazarus** ordered new wine and said: “The great and the very exalted teaching which we have now heard from Your godly mouth must also be confirmed by a new wine and be sealed in our heart.”

[2] **I** said: “You are right about that, friend and brother Lazarus. All that which is good and true has its complete correspondence in bread and wine. Therefore, you can be assured that after Me when you moderately will be using bread and wine in remembrance of Me, that I will be in the spirit, as now in the body, personally among you My children, brothers and friends until the end of all times of this Earth. Surely, you will not always see Me with the eyes of your body, but then still, your heart will tell you: ‘Rejoice, for your Lord, God and Father is among you and is blessing the bread and wine for you. Therefore, be joyful and cheerful in His name, and remember by that the poor brothers and sisters, and more precisely the poor in spirit.’

[3] When your heart will give you such a stimulation, remember and belief always that I will be personally among you, and



whatever you will then ask Me which is good and true for the life of your soul, I will always very willingly give it in a well understandable way.

[4] Thus, those who will greet Me with great love in their heart will soon be able to convince themselves also with their eyes that I really am personally among them. And what I am saying and explaining here to all of you is also fully valid for all your true and faithful followers. But give Me the new wine now, for I have become thirsty.”

[5] Then a very fresh and very good wine was served. I drunk, and also the others were drinking and praised the wine that by My will had been made well savored with herbs and sweetened.

[6] When we strengthened ourselves in this way, the scribe asked once more if I was now disposed to give him an answer to what he had asked Me.

[7] **I** said however: “Friend, there are still other things which are more important to talk about than the end of paganism. First, just let the morning come, and the Pharisees who are resting in the other room will depart from here. Then in the open air I will explain to you in images the how and when of the end of all that which is called world and paganism.

[8] But now we will, as already said, talk about something else that is more important for the moment than the sad and extremely distressed end of all that which is worldly and paganism. About what should we, according to you, talk firstly now, and of what are you all in real need to know and to believe?”

[9] Now **Peter** spoke once more: “Lord, I still have something – if ever I may speak also – and this I am asking You. Then I indeed have a question to ask You.”

[10] **I** said: “Then speak, for everyone of you has now the right to speak and to ask.”

[11] Now **Peter** said: “Lord, Moses has prescribed for the purification of sinners certain outer means that are well known to every Jew. Must we also make use of them? Do they have for man any power that is hollowing him, and are they absolutely necessary

for the attainment of the eternal life of the soul?

[12] Must also the gentiles be circumcised if they accept the teaching, or is for them baptism sufficient? And besides the circumcision, must also the other means of purification be applied with the gentiles who have been converted to us?"

[13] **I** said: "He who is a Jew and is circumcised will also always remain circumcised, but circumcision in itself is nothing and has for nobody any secret or particular magical hollowing value for the soul.

[14] Man is hollowed by nothing else except by the living faith and its actual love for God and the fellowman.

[15] However, he who has sinned against God and against his fellowman should acknowledge his sins with true repentance, ask God seriously for forgiveness, make up for the injustice that he has caused to his fellowman, and further stop from sinning. Then subsequently he is fully purified. For when he makes up for the evil and refrains from sinning, it is evident that also his sins are forgiven.

[16] However, he who will not do that, will continuously remain entirely in all his sins and its bad consequences, even if 10,000 goats would be slaughtered and be thrown into the Jordan. This and also all the other outer means of purification do not improve nor hollow man in the least, but only his true and sincere acting according to My teaching, and the belief in his heart in the one, true God, and thus in Me.

[17] I have already told you that you should baptize in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit all those who earnestly and truly accept and are answering to My teaching and thus also Myself. For that, the laying-on of hands is sufficient, and as an outer sign of true, inner purification by God's Spirit a washing with clean water. And this is truly sufficient for Jews and gentiles.

[18] All the rest has from now on no more value in My eyes, just like an outer prayer with the lips – no matter how long it is – has no value for Me. He who wants his prayer to be answered must go into the quiet chamber of his heart and pray to Me in full faith,

then I will grant him what he has asked for.

[19] I say to you once more, just as I have said already so many times before: search in everything only the truth, this will set you completely free.

[20] It is very good when man is keeping his body clean according to the teaching of Moses. Through uncleanness all kinds of malicious diseases will come in the flesh and in the blood, and these are causing dislike and grief in the still weak soul. But that which is cleaning the flesh from the dirt does not clean the soul from his sins. The Jews are indeed washing their hands before and after a meal and often also their feet, and we are often not doing that, and still we are cleaner with unwashed hands than the strict Jews with always washed hands and feet.

[21] And now, short and good: no outer way of purification has a hollowing effect on the inner man, but only the living faith in the truth, and the love and the good works thereof. Did you understand this now?"

[22] **Peter** said: "Then it is also not necessary anymore in the future that we should bless the marriages like the temple priests?"

[23] **I** said: "As such, not at all, because the marriage bond is sufficiently sealed by the mutual promise in the presence of the parents or other true witnesses. However, if in a community that you will have established in My name, you have marriages that you have recognized as good and will bless them in My name, then this will be beneficial as a confirmation of their commitment. This need only to be done as a service of love based on your good will.

[24] I am only giving you this as a good advice and not as a law. And therefore, you also should not make a law of it, because tonight I have shown you more than sufficiently what kind of negative influences that coercing laws have on souls with a free will, as well as its inescapable consequences. And therefore you should only act freely out of true and pure love and never out of a coercing commandment. Only from this, will My true disciples be recognized, namely from the fact that among one another, they only practice the free law of love, and are loving one another

mutually, just as I am now loving you all.

[25] But such a paid blessing of a marriage by an authoritarian and proud priest in or outside the temple has for Me not the least of value, but only My greatest displeasure. And whatever is displeasing to Me is certainly also in contradiction with My order and is an evil and a sin that truly will bring no blessing to anyone. If you have well understood this, then do also act like it, then you will do well.”

[26] Then **Agricola** said: “Lord and Master, then we Romans will also do well if we will handle our marriages likewise. And what is Your opinion concerning polygamy? Are You for or against it?”

## 89. POLYGAMY



SAID: “He who among you gentiles will walk in My teaching will also gladly hear such an advice from Me. But concerning polygamy, it should be with My followers as it was in the beginning with the people on this Earth, since God has created only one first man and gave him only one woman. For he who has married already a woman to who he has given his full love and unshakable faithfulness, and who will then marry a second and a third woman – and some even more – then he commits indisputably adultery against the first woman, and in the law it is stated: ‘You shall not commit adultery’.

[2] I say to you that polygamy is evil, for it makes the soul very sensual by the great lustfulness of the flesh. It is and remains evil lewdness, whoring and obvious adultery.

[3] All those who are afflicted with these diseases will not enter God’s Kingdom. How could they? Their soul is indeed buried too deeply in the sensual flesh of their body and cannot understand nor feel anything spiritual. Therefore, such sensual people cannot or hardly come into God’s Kingdom. For wherein the actual Kingdom of God consists I already have explained to all of you more than sufficiently.

[4] But no matter how harmful polygamy is for the soul of man,

still I do not give you a law against it, but I leave everything up to the free will of every person, showing you the truth and giving you a good advice.

[5] It is the same when a man keeps female slaves as cohabitants or concubines, for also with them he is breaking the marriage regarding his official woman.

[6] However, a man who is not married with a woman, but is only living his lustful life with cohabitants is as evil and often even more evil than many weak adulterer, for he harms not only his own soul but also the souls of his sensual cohabitants. Such people are already in this world preparing for themselves a wicked and bitter fate, and an even worse and bitterer fate in the beyond, for by their way of life they have wasted almost all ethereal life elements of the soul.

[7] He who, according to My teaching desires a quick and complete rebirth in the spirit of his soul, needs to live a life that is as chaste as possible and should not let himself be charmed and seduced by the flesh of young and adult women, for this draws the life of the soul outwardly and by that he prevents greatly the awakening of the spirit in the soul, without which however no complete rebirth of the soul in his spirit is imaginable or possible.

[8] A good marriage that is combined with reason, wisdom and self-denial does not hinder the spiritual rebirth, but lewdness and lust makes it impossible. Therefore, avoid these more than the pest.

[9] Even if after some time the sensual people of both sexes change their attitude completely and start through great self-denial to live a complete chaste life and receive by such a real penance also the complete forgiveness of their sins, then they still will with difficulty or not at all attain to the full spiritual rebirth in this world, but only partly. Because the soul of such people is already busy enough to free himself of his flesh in such a way that he can hear the warnings of the spirit that are necessary for his salvation. Although, such a person can still become very wise and can accomplish many good things, he hardly will come to the full

extent of the active power that performs wonders. Such a soul can only attain to this in the beyond.

[10] Such a soul is like a person who has been sick and weak for many years and has finally recovered by a true and correct medicine. Yes, such a person is now indeed healthy, and he can, when he will live from then on very orderly, also remain healthy and reach a high age, but he hardly will reach the power of a person who has been completely healthy since his childhood, because firstly his inner muscles, nerves and fibers were not able to be developed properly because of the long sickness, and secondly, what is most important, they also were not able to be trained in the different movements and efforts.

[11] Since such a person, because of the long lasting sickness is not able to easily reach the full power of the body of a very healthy person because of the lack of the inner development of the muscles, nerves and fibers and because of its lack of exercise, so it is also with a soul who has been sick for a long time, because he lacks the first development of the true and pure love for God, and consequently also of his faith and his will. However, if he will lack already the first, then he certainly will lack even more the exercise of the 3 basics that were mentioned, and the inner power of these 3 life's elements of the soul of a complete recovered sensual person will always stay behind, although in Heaven there is more joy for the full conversion of 1 sinner than over 99 righteous ones who never needed to do penance. For if the love, the faith and the will of a person truly want to be active in power, they must already since their early age be properly developed and then be well trained.

[12] But as I have the power to heal completely the heaviest and the longest lasting sickness, even in such a way that the person who has been healed by Me becomes as powerful as if he has never been sick since his birth, so from now on, a soul of a completely converted sinner can still attain to the same inner power as the soul of a righteous one who never needed to do penance. However it will cost him great effort to deny himself.

[13] He who has children should train them already since their early age in those 3 basics, then they will easily conquer the world in themselves.

[14] Look, all this I am giving you only as good advice and not as some law, for under a compelling law, you, a human being, cannot become the founder of your salvation. However, he who will impose himself such an advice of Me in his will as a compelling law, and will act and live accordingly, will do well. Did you well understand all this now?"

## 90. THE RIGHT PENANCE



**ALL of them said:** “Yes, truly most wise Lord and Master. Thus the true and perfect penance is and remains the only real cure for the soul (sacramentum), and all the rest is nothing and has no value for life. This we all can see now well and very clear. But what do You, o Lord and Master, think about the strict penance in sack and ashes? Are the sack and ashes necessary for a strict penance?”

[2] **I said:** “These are quite as unnecessary as it was unnecessary from your side to ask Me about this, since I have already told you clearly wherein the true and for Me valuable penance of a sinner consists. What kind of sanctification can a sack and ashes offer man for his soul? A sack and ashes were instituted by the elders as symbolic images under which the right penance has to be understood, because the sack stands for the outer humility and the ashes for the true inner humility of the soul. But only the carrying of a sack and the strewing of ashes on the head has given man quite as less sanctification as fasting and castigating. Like a soldier who creeps away in a safe hole out of fright and fear for the enemy instead of courageously accepting the fight against him, will most probably not be crowned with a crown of victory.

[3] For this reason: away with sack and ashes, away with castigating and fasting, and away with the sacrificing of goats, and away with all the other temple sacrifices for the forgiveness of

sins, for those do not have the least of value for life for Me. However, instead of this, one should display a firm and inflexible will for a true inner improvement of life, as well as a living love for God and fellowman, and the full faith in God and His incarnation in Me, for only this sanctifies man and makes the soul strong, giving him to live entirely in My Spirit that prevails in him.

[4] Remain with this, and teach it also to all other nations, then you will save Me from sending the threatened judgment over all the heathens in later times. However, you should not shudder and tremble before the people, but with a good and courageous will you should proclaim to them openly the full godly seriousness of the truth. And even if you should not be able to oppose effectively and successfully all the heathens in a short time, the pure truth will very well be able to do that in future times. Because the great judgment over the kingdom of the lie that I have announced, consists in the victory of the truth. And that will not be a different truth than what I am proclaiming to you now.

[5] During that time, I will again awaken men and even virgins who will be transmitting this truth out of My mouth as pure and as clear into their heart as I am proclaiming it to you now with My physical mouth, and that truth will be the mighty and relentless judge over all the blind heathens.

[6] Thus, no more sack and ashes, but the full truth in everything and a firm will.

[7] And so, My disciples and friends, I have spoken to you now fully clearly and not in images, and so you should also clearly understand and grasp it, more precisely through action, for knowledge alone is of little or no use at all for the soul. But whoever offers a real sacrifice through the action of the truth, will receive eternal life.

[8] And now, tell Me once more if there is still a dark foolish thing bothering you, and if in full truth you have understood these clear words of Mine. However, I do not ask you this as if I should not know how and if all of you have understood all this, but I am only asking you this so that you also should ask in your heart how the



truth is formed in you, because only this belongs to your own life. And now you can speak again.”

[9] **All of them said as if with one mouth:** “O Lord and Master, we have now all well understood everything that You have explained to us and we can also see the full truth of what has been said and what has been explained. Therefore, we also will execute it in course of time – in the first place for ourselves – and we will also announce it to the other people who are of good will. But nevertheless we strongly doubt if the many very blind people will joyfully accept this golden light truth as such. Because he who can see, will certainly always experience joy at the daybreak, but for completely blind ones the night and the day are nearly the same.

[10] Yet, there are a great number of people who are completely blind in spirit and are only feeling happiness in the old mysterious ceremony, thinking that they are sinning against God – who they never knew – if they have to give up one or the other thing of the old customs, and consequently have to lay off the old man as an old, half decayed garment and have to put on a completely new garment.

[11] With such people it will be difficult to talk to and to act, and this can be easily foreseen, for he who has not already walked on the way of many experiences and did not come to a clearer thinking, will therefore also not completely accept this shining truth as such into his heart. But because of the old rusted habit he will hold on to the ancient mystery. He will consider the old manners and customs as a religion that has to be supremely honored above everything else, and will finally consider these new, shining truths as heresies and will despise and persecute them. And so, it will become difficult to proclaim these shining truths to the very many blind ones and to persuade them that these are also valid for them.

[12] So there is an old custom with the Jews according to which they have to make a confession in front of a priest, so that he can know his sins as well as his good works, weighs out the pro’s and cons and compares them, with the help of which he can establish

the penance and the sacrifices of purification for the atonement of the sins. Now the one who has shown himself in such a way to a priest, and furthermore has also done and accomplished that which was imposed by the priest will then consider himself as completely purified and justified before God. But if one will take a closer look at him, then he is and remains after such purification still completely the same incorrigible person, and until his next confession he not only commits the old sins again but often also a few new ones. And from this, it is clear that this old custom of purification is not only making the person not any better but often only worse than what he was before.

[13] But if one would try to act against this old nonsense and to teach, he will have to flee if he does not want to be stoned. What do You, o Lord and Master, have to say on this?"

## 91. FORGIVENESS OF SINS



SAID: "Precisely for this reason you have to proclaim the truth to the people. Whoever will accept it, will be free and blessed. However, those who will not accept it will therefore continuously remain in their sins and in the judgment and the spiritual death thereof.

[2] I do not compel you to teach these truths of life to all people in a very short time, so that they also should live completely according to it. For the time being I only have given this to you in order to understand the secret of God's Kingdom, and not also in this time to all the terrible blind people. Later however, you will meet a great number of people who will join you with all diligence and who will work together with you for the sake of the truths that I have proclaimed to you.

[3] However, concerning the confession of guilt before the priests as such that was mentioned by you, as they are now they are wicked and thus completely objectionable because they do not improve the people but they only make the people to persist in their sins until their end. But I am not against it when a weak

person, whose soul is sick, will voluntarily and honestly confess his weaknesses and faults to someone with a healthy soul who is stronger than him, because the healthy person who is strong of light can then out of true neighborly love easily convey to him the real way by which the soul of the weak fellowman can become stronger and healthy. Because in this way, a person can be a real savior of souls. However, I am not making a law of it, but with this I am only giving you a good advice. And whatever I am doing, do likewise and convey the truth to everyone.

[4] The confession of sins alone will not purify a person from his sins, no more than when a physically sick person will be made healthy when he tells the doctor about his disease and how he has caught it, even if he does it in all sincerity. But he should listen to the advice of the doctor who is wise and has much knowledge, and then also follow the advice faithfully and avoid everything in the future that was the cause of his disease.

[5] So it is also good when in a community every brother knows the other, his strong as well as his weak points, so that, concerning the soul, and also physically, one can and want to support the other according to the full truth. However, the one who does not want to tell anything because he thinks that with his confession he might offend anyone should not be provoked by anybody to confess his weaknesses.

[6] But if anyone among you is wise, and his spirit reveals to him the weaknesses of the weak and fearful brother, then the wise one should give him privately a good advice and assist him by word and deed to help him out of his hidden need. Then his reward will not be kept away from him.

[7] However, let everyone have his free will and force no one, for now you know that every moral compulsion is completely contrary to My eternal order. What I am not doing, you also should not do.

[8] And now we have spoken the right words about the sincere confession of weaknesses and secret sins. Everything that is above or below that is against My order and is evil.

[9] But you should not treat the weak brother who trustingly has

been sincere to a stronger one among you, with a threatening face as from a judge, but always openly tell the truth to him with all love and friendliness, and also convey to him the means by which he easily and safely can be healed. Then he will not be discouraged and will be a grateful student of the free truth. But when you will approach him with all kinds of sermons of penance, you will not only accomplish little or nothing with him but will make him more miserable than he ever was before.

[10] Unfortunately, in later times it will however happen that confessions of guilt before the false prophets will be more practiced than they have ever been among the Pharisees and arch Jews, and this will lead to the fall and the judgment of the false prophets who work in My name. Because those will tell the people – as the heathens are doing – that God has given the authority only to them to forgive all sinners their sins or to hold them accountable for them. In this way, in return of big offerings, they will declare their blind favorite ones to be blessed and holy for all the Heavens.

[11] When that will happen, the time will soon be near wherein the great judgment over the new paganism will take place. Therefore, be careful with the open confessions, so that they<sup>3</sup> would not too easily imitate you with an even more wicked mentality than it is the case now with the Pharisees and arch Jews.

[12] I also have told you once – and more precisely to My old disciples – that you can forgive those who have sinned against you, and that to those to whom you have forgiven their sins here on Earth must and will also be forgiven in Heaven. However, if you, because of an unmistakable incorrigibility, would have a good reason to hold them accountable for the sins that they have committed against you, then they also will be accountable for them in Heaven.

[13] We already have seen before that you have only the right to hold sinners accountable for the sins that they have committed

---

<sup>3</sup> The false prophets

against you when you have forgiven them already 7 times 77 times before.

[14] If you as My nearest disciples are only receiving the right from Me to hold accountable for or to forgive on the mentioned manner the sins of those who have sinned against you, then it is clear that no priest can ever have the right from God to forgive or to hold them accountable for the sins who have been committed against them.

[15] Of the one for instance who has sinned against Caiphas, Caiphas can also forgive the sins or, dependent on how the case looks like, hold them accountable for it. However, the one who has sinned against Herod, he has nothing to do with Caiphas, nor he with him, but only with Herod. The one however who sins against the temple, should see how he could put matters straight with the temple.

[16] But by this I do not mean of course the temple as it is now, but as it was during former times, for now also I would be a sinner against the temple, just like all of you are, and therefore we also do not have to make a confession of guilt to the temple. Because now, we are the supreme true temple of God, and the one down there has become a den of murderers. For this reason, the harvest of its evil fruits that it has sowed on its fields will begin soon. Then one will not harvest grapes or figs from its thorns and thistles.

[17] However, how the situation is now with the temple – mind you, in the name of Jehovah – so will once – and even much worse – the situation be in My name with the new paganism. But the harvest of its fruits will turn out to be much worse than the harvest of that temple down there.


[18] It will certainly not be your fault concerning the new paganism, just as it is also not the fault of the prophets when the temple down there has become now the way it never should have been. But all guilt will be from the side of the people whose comfortable laziness did not allow them to walk independently on the ways of the truth, but instead they preferred to let others – namely the so-called priests – walk on the ways of the dirty

sacrifices that were given to them, who however are also not walking on the ways of the truth but only on the ways of deceit and lie. There, one completely blind person will lead the other, just as long as the two will come to a pit and then both will fall into it.

[19] Now that you have heard this from My mouth, you should also understand it according to the full truth, and let yourselves never be tempted by the laziness of the highly ranked ones. For he who does not want to work, will also not eat of the meal of life.”

[20] **The scribe** said: “Well now, that was extremely clearly spoken by You, and the truth of that which You have spoken is very plain. If Moses and the prophets had also spoken so clearly to the people as You, o Lord and Master, have now spoken to us, then the whole Jewry would look quite different than how it looks like now in this evil time. When Your teaching will be known among the people, it certainly will forever bear quite different fruits, for from our side this teaching will really be conveyed to the other people as little differently as the stars at the sky are unchangeably coming up and are going down. We only ask You, o Lord and Master, never to leave us with Your mercy and help, as well as those who will guide and steer Your people after us.”

## 92. THE NATURE SPIRITS OF THE AIR

 SAID: “It is true that you have spoken very well now, and this teaching that has now been given to you will be kept in its purity by those who are pure until the end of times, but when you think that the Jewry would be different if Moses and the prophets had spoken to the people as clearly as I have spoken to you now, then I say that you are greatly mistaken in this. For if Moses and the prophets had spoken in the same manner as I have spoken to you now, then the people would not have understood Moses nor the prophets, because during that time the easiest way to express themselves was only by means of corresponding images.

[2] During that time, even the very simple and common people

possessed the science of correspondences. Their writing consisted of images and their language pointed at images that were well known by the people. However, when the people had come to a more earthly welfare and honor, it soon needed a great number of earthly necessities, and in order to satisfy those, they had to acquire a great number of natural means. Well now, the many necessities and the many means received also their very simple names, behind which there were no corresponding images. Then these simple names of the many necessities and the means to satisfy them that were invented by the people replaced later all too soon the symbolic scripture and its inner meaning. And so, it was neither the fault of Moses nor of the prophets that they are no more understood by the present-day Jews. But it was only the fault of the people themselves who by their increasing worldly attitude that was caused by them, lost completely the science of the old scripture and the old language that always contained deep spiritual things.

[3] If you had spoken during the time of Moses as you are speaking now, then at that time nor Moses nor one of the other prophets would have understood you. However, since the old language has now in this time been entirely lost by you for the reasons that were made known to you, you should search therein the reason why now you cannot understand Moses or the prophets.

[4] But now the first morning light is dawning, and our temple servants in the other hall are starting to move to leave soon for their houses and to make arrangements for their departure according to their firm resolution. As soon as they will leave, we will go outside in the open air and will make our observations.

[5] And you, friend Lazarus, will do well when you will let a few of your helpers go with the temple servants as escort until the gate of the garden, for in their thoughts they can see the 3 lions lying in wait down there along the way, for which reason they are scared to move. Therefore, let a few of your helpers go to their room to tell them that not a single trace of the lions can be found anymore. If ever they still will have some objections, then the helpers should

offer to escort them, what the temple servants will gladly accept, where after they will leave immediately, and then we soon will go outside.”

[6] Lazarus did so immediately, and within a few moments the helpers were ready, and within a little quarter of an hour the temple servants were already leaving.

[7] Then **I** called My Raphael to Me and said because of those who were present aloud to him: “You take care now of our young people, and bring them to Bethany ahead of us on a not too commonly used way. Wait there for us, for 3 hours later we will be there also.”

[8] Then Raphael hurried to the youth and settled everything quickly.

[9] In the mean time it became brighter, and we left the inn and went to the hill that was already described. In the sky the bigger stars were still glittering, the moon with an already small crescent, and the planet Venus, which all together gave a wonderful view.

[10] However, the morning was rather cool, and **the Romans** said: “This special view would be really splendid if ever the morning would not be so terribly cold.”

[11] **I** said: “The fact that it is so cool, is for the skin indeed a little unpleasant, but it is surely strengthening for the body and soul, because now the purer spirits in the sky are passing by before us. But if it is too chilly for you, I surely can arrange it for you, so that you will feel a little warmer on the outside. We however will stay in this pure temperature.”

[12] Then **the Romans** said: “Oh, then we also will stay, because also for us Romans a greater strengthening for body and soul cannot be harmful.”

[13] And so, everything continued to be cheerful and satisfied, and nobody paid any more attention to the coolness.

[14] Then **Agricola** said to Me: “Lord and Master, do the spirits who are now passing by before us also have a shape in itself, or do they flow without form into each other like one drop of water flows into the other in the sea?”



[15] **I** said: “My friend, it will be a little difficult to give you in this respect a completely understandable answer, but we will try it in another way. I want to open for you Romans for a few moments again the inner sight, then you can give a right answer to yourselves by what you are seeing.”

[16] The Romans thought this to be a good idea, and I opened immediately their inner sight, also for Agrippa and Laius who followed us from Emmaus to this place and who were still with us.

[17] Now they both saw the numerous shapes close to one another, floating before them, and **Agrippa** said: “Oh, this is really strange. What a great number of forms and shapes that is hard to describe. All kinds of herbs and plants can be seen, and also seeds between them. On the plants you also can see a great quantity of eggs of all kinds of insects, their larvae and also already fully-grown insects. Within these forms, in the plants as well as its seed, and also in the eggs of insects and in the larvae, but also in the forms of insects that are already fully grown out, you can see like bright points that are lightning up, and between the mentioned forms you can see an immense great number of very little bright spots that are floating with them. And all this is swarming between one another in a multicolored and lively manner, and nothing is mixing with anything else. So, are these the purer nature spirits?”

[18] Then I closed the inner sight of the Romans again, and they saw again nothing else except the pure air.

[19] Then **Agricola** said: “Lord and Master, what kind of special purpose do those spirits actually have? Does all that for which they apparently carry the natural ability in their forms, only exist in the material world out of them or are these in a certain way the souls of deceased plants and herbs and trees and insects?”

[20] **I** said: “The second one not, but the first one yes, in the manner you have now seen it by way of the inner sight.

[21] Their intelligence that revealed itself also in the form stimulates them to unite themselves with all that which is very closely related with their own form and which already exists on this Earth. Further, they become active in the plants, and on their

number and the intensity of their activity depends the abundance of one or the other harvest, as also from the number of the most various little animals, which you call little mosquitoes, insects and worms. These however are always the first animals of an earth in development, and the uniting of their souls brings the greater animals of an earth to life.”


[22] **Agricola** said: “Lord and Master, but why could we not see any souls of people of this Earth who have already died?”

[23] **I** said: “For 2 reasons. Firstly I have opened your inner sight to such extent that you were only able to see the nature spirits that were already passing over into matter, and this belongs to the lowest degree of the inner vision, which many simple people are possessing as a natural ability. With this degree of inner vision, the souls, especially those who are already more perfected, cannot be seen, because this kind of vision still belongs more to the material than to the pure spiritual vision.

[24] However, in the second place, concerning the impure souls who you could have seen with the inner vision which was giving to you for a few moments by Me, not one of them was located on this place, and thus you also were not able to see nor observe any, because such souls can feel the place of My personal and full presence and are avoiding it very carefully. And now you know the 2 causes why at this occasion you were not able to see nor observe any deceased souls.”

[25] With this explanation all Romans were completely satisfied and did not ask Me any further about such things.

### 93. AGRICOLA REMEMBERS MARY OF MAGDALON

 **UT Agricola**, who was an extremely sensitive person, asked Me if he was permitted to say something, and he said: “Oh, what an immeasurable treasures did we now receive in merely 8 full days. We have found here the highest of all, the very first and the very greatest. And according to Your hidden mercy, this indescribable happiness is thanks to who? Look

and listen. To the still young woman who has shown us the way up here during the first evening of our arrival here.

[2] That woman – who according to my humble opinion seems to belong to those female persons who do not take it so strictly what concerns chastity and other moral cleanness – was undoubtedly inspired by Your will and had to be a sign to the light of life.

[3] Well now, I as Roman do absolutely not know the woman that I mentioned. I also do not know where she lives and do not know her name. So I also cannot know if she is poor or rich and if she needs financial support. But if perhaps she would belong to the class of poor people, what I can believe to be the most probable, then out of sincere human gratefulness I gladly would like to give here a financial support through friend Lazarus, which certainly would be just and fair, because friend Lazarus will probably know about the condition of that woman. It really surprises me that until now she has not yet visited us here on this mountain of salvation. As I remember, she wanted to search for You, o Lord and Master, and before that, she took information here to know where You were staying, but she did not hear anything about it. And consequently she probably did not come to this place at all. But we are now already here a few days and I am surprised again that she did not show up anymore.”

[4] I said: “That girl did not know that I am still here, but she heard it yesterday in Bethany from the mouth of the sisters of our friend Lazarus and is now on her way to this place. At the time when the sun will rise she will arrive here, and then everything that is good and just you can settle with her.

[5] Concerning her way of life until now, in this you were right, but by that she was always mindful for the poor because as an earthly beauty she gathered great treasures by her way of life and was already richly provided by her parents.

[6] There, far to the south you can see on a hill a mansion, it carries the name Magdalon. There was the girl born. And the mansion, the many gardens, fields, pastures, vineyards and forests are now her property since her parents have died already a couple

of years ago. She could have married already on several occasions but the temple servants kept her from it because they always could find with her a good inn and also they were otherwise well amused with her. However, since she saw Me, came to know Me and heard My words, it became different in her house, her mind and her heart, and because she had a great love for the poor, also many of her sins were forgiven.

[7] Her name is Mary of Magdalon. So she does not need any support from your side, but if she will be willing to accept anything from you on behalf of her many poor people, then you certainly can offer this to her. And now you know also who that girl is and where she comes from, and what her name is. But also her guilt, be it written in the sand.

[8] Now we have said enough about this matter. Let us now rather look at the beautiful morning. From the view you can conclude a lot of things in every respect, more precisely concerning the last time of the new heathens.”

#### 94. THE JUDGMENT ON PAGANISM



**OW My old disciples** said: “Lord and Master, You have promised us that, while we are here, You would tell us more about it. Thus, do it now, since it probably is now the best moment for it.”

[2] **I** said: “When it is the best moment, I surely will know best. And besides, I already have told you already a lot about it, what will certainly also happen, for I may change nothing to the free will of man – and you cannot change it also.

[3] However, with My birth, the judgment of the heathens has already begun everywhere. It now continues increasingly and will still continue for almost 2,000 years until the full light among the people on this Earth.

[4] As you can see now in the morning sky how all kinds of clouds are forming and are piling up at the horizon as if they want to stop the rising of the sun, so also great numbers of all kinds of

obstructing clouds will rise up sky high against the coming great rise of the eternal and spiritual sun of truth, and will do great harm among the people. But they finally will not be able to stop the great rise of the sun of truth.

[5] You just have seen many beautiful stars shining in the sky, and also in the west you have seen stars that were glittering deep into the night. Look, these preceded as good messengers the still visible messengers of the morning and worked during the night. And that is now your task.

[6] However, when brighter morning messengers will come up at the spiritual morning horizon, then this will be a sign that the great and general sun of life and truth will soon follow. Its very bright light will be a relentless judgment for all lies and deceit that together with its followers and worshippers and its great worldly pomp will be slung into the abyss of contempt, righteous wrath and forgetfulness. For then, the enlightened people will not think back anymore about the deceit and the judgment that lasted so long.

[7] But already now you can observe quite well that the mass of clouds that looked so threatening black is having golden edges that are lightening up. So you also will notice during that time that the people who shortly before were still totally dark and true enemies of the light of truth, are from all sides more and more enlightened and are becoming brighter by the light rays of the truth. And further also, radiating themselves, they become enemies of the old lie. And such enlightening by the sun of truth out of the Heavens which is drawing near to its full rise, will be My sign of the Son of Man for all true people on Earth and the beginning of the great judgment on the harlot of the new Babylon.

[8] Then those who love the truth will burst out for joy and will praise Me, for I already have sent them before the sign of My rise at the sky of the inner spiritual day. But the enemies of the truth will start to wail and gnash their teeth, and they will – as far as this will still be somehow possible – try to hide themselves into dark corners, together with their continuously decreasing number of followers, which will however be of no use to them, because when

at that time the full sun of truth will have risen, its light will totally enlighten all dark corners and holes, and the enemies of the light will no more find, nowhere on the whole Earth a place of refuge.

[9] I Myself will however be in that sun as the eternal Truth, and by means of its light I will be ruler and leader of the people's life and of their temporary, spiritual and eternal destiny.

[10] And by this I have shown you now the full and well understandable truth about the great judgment of the new and the old paganism. But for the sake of the people I will give you another image that you also can tell the people, but not without the right explanation. Let us now quietly continue to view this morning scene."

## 95. THE FUTURE OF ROME AND OF THE ANTICHRIST



AFTER about a quarter of an hour when we all were looking with great interest at the morning scenes, I said again to those who were present: "Be attentive now to all the images that will appear before the full rise of the sun, because I want that you also will see with your eyes how everything will develop during the last time of the new paganism."

[2] Now all of them were turning their eyes with doubled attention to the east. It was still quite half an hour before the full sunrise, and thus still many images could develop before the eyes of the disciples who were watching.

[3] Firstly one could see in the distance a thick and completely black mist arising from the horizon. When this had reached about 7 times the height of the faraway mountain range at the horizon, it soon seemed to glow, because countless flashes of lightning were shooting through it, so that all those who were present, thought that a terrible storm was now raging there.

[4] However, I said: "You may worry about something else, for apart from us, no one can see anything of this phenomenon."

[5] Then they all continued to look on to see what else would follow.

[6] And look, on the upper black edge of the mass of mist that was completely glowing by the many lightning appeared a big city.

[7] And **I** said: “Look at the image of the new Babylon.”

[8] Then **Agricola** said: “Lord, that looks very much like Rome. I merely can see a great number of ruins around the city, and in the city itself, besides those buildings that I know very well, there are also a great number of new buildings and temples of which the front is strangely decorated with crosses. What does all that mean?”

[9] **I** said: “Look, that is the fall of the old and at the same time the beginning of the new paganism. Already within approximately 500 to 600 years, counted from now on, this is how it literally will look like. However, keep on looking at the image now.”

[10] Again all of them were looking attentively at the image of which the scenes were quickly developing one after another. And look, one could see great migrations of the nations and many fierce battles and wars, and in the middle of the city one could see something that was arising as high as a mountain. On the mountain stood a high and big throne that looked like as if it was made of glowing gold. On the throne sat a ruler with a triple crown on the head and with a staff of which the top end was decorated with a triple cross. Out of his mouth came countless arrows, and out of his eyes and out of his chest countless lightning of anger and very great pride was also shooting out. And kings came to him of whom many bowed deeply before him. He looked friendly at those who were bowing like that before him and he confirmed their power, but those who did not bow before him were persecuted and greatly harmed by his arrows and lightning.

[11] Now **Agricola** said: “Lord, this does not look too good for the later rulers over the new Babylon. It seems that their power will be greater but also much more cruel than it is now. Because now, only the worst criminals are punished with the cross, but only with a single cross, but he there is actually holding before all kings not less than a triple cross in his ruling hand. Lord and Master, do explain this somehow to us.”

[12] **I** said: “This does not represent a special ruler over many nations and people, but only the visible personality of the antichrist. That triple cross stands for My teaching, which during that time will be imposed triply falsified before the kings and their people. False in the word, false in the truth and false in the real application of it.

[13] However, the kings who do not bow before him and whom he curses are those who are still more or less possessing the truth of the old teaching. His arrows and lightning are indeed reaching them, but these cannot much harm them. But continue to look at the image, for I only can show you therein the most important moments.”

[14] Now all continued to look on with great attention.

[15] **(The Lord):** “Look, many kings, who earlier bowed very deeply before the one who sits on the throne, are gathering their armies and are marching against him. Look, it leads to an embittered battle, and his exalted throne is sinking already quite a long way down completely into the city, and you only can see a few kings who so to say are only bowing before him for form’s sake while now there are a lot of arrows and lightning that are sent back by the many other kings who have become unfaithful to him. But now, almost nothing can be seen of him, and this will happen after 1,000 to 1,500 to 1,600 and 1,700 years.

[16] But look again now. Look, he is trying to exalt himself once more, surrounded by black gangs, and a few kings are stretching out their hand to help him, but look, those who are doing that are soon becoming powerless, and their nations are pulling off the crowns from their heads and are giving them to the strong kings. And look. Now his throne sinks down, and the strong kings are hurrying towards the place and are dividing it up into several pieces. And so, all his might, pride and greatness is going to ruin. Although he still slings arrows and weak lightning all around him, but those are harming no one anymore because most of the time they are returning to him and are injuring him and his weak and dark troops.



## 96. ABOUT THE 1,000-YEAR KINGDOM

**B**UT you can see now that the sun is already penetrating everything with its light, and you can see the dark troops fleeing in all directions, but not to the place from where the sun is coming. Everything disappears now for its light and sinks into the kingdom of forgetfulness.

[2] But look now again, then you can see how out of the little clouds a new Earth is developing. What do those little clouds mean? Those are the people who have united together who are totally enlightened by the godly truth. And look, now these communities are coming closer and closer to one another and in this way they are forming one great community. That is the new Earth above which a new Heaven is spreading out with full light and clearness.

[3] You must however not think that by that this natural Earth will perish and would be changed into a new one, but only the people will create with each other in My name a new spiritual Earth, because they are accepting completely the godly truth as true brothers and sisters.

[4] Then I Myself will be and rule on this new Earth among those who are Mine, and they will fellowship with Me and will never more lose sight of Me.

[5] But now look in the mean time also to the old Earth. See how from the new Earth more and more dense streams of lights are floating downwards to the old Earth, and so they are igniting it in such a way that it looks like to be in a blaze. There you can see a lot of dead people who are coming as it were out of their graves and are going to the light. See how they soon are clothed with the garment of truth and are then floating upwards to the Kingdom of the new Earth.

[6] But at the same time you can notice also that still a very great dark part of it are also making effort to put on the garment of light above their black garment to make from it and with it again a new anti-Christian paganism out of self-interest and lust of power. But I

Myself am letting My wrath – that means the fire of My truth – to break loose, and My angels of the new Earth are throwing themselves as it were with flaming swords on them and are chasing every further dark attempt on the run into the abyss of total destruction.

[7] This is the very last and greatest judgment, a 1,000 years later. That time will be called My 1,000 year Kingdom on Earth, which will be once more interrupted by war for a very short time by this very last judgment. But the victory will be quick and complete for all future times. From that time on there will be for the Heavens and the Earth one Shepherd and one flock. The Shepherd will be, as always, Me, and the flock will consist of the people on Earth, completely united with the blessed ones in My Heavens.

[8] These last mentioned ones will fellowship visibly with the people on Earth, just like it was before during the ancient times of the people on this Earth. But before that will happen, also the natural Earth will experience very drastic changes. Big countries and kingdoms, which are now still covered by the great and deep sea, will be lifted up as very fertile soil, and many mountains that are still high now will be lowered. Their tops that are crumbled off will fill up a great number of deep canyons and valleys and produce fertile land.

[9] Since the people during that time will no more covet nor pursue perishable treasures, 100,000 times as many people as now will be able to live very well provided and happy on Earth. Together with that, every evil disease that tortures the flesh terribly will during that time also disappear from the Earth. The people will cheerfully reach a high age and will be able to do a lot of good works, and nobody will be afraid for the death of the body for he will see clearly before his eyes the eternal life of the soul.


[10] By the performance of good works it will be essential during that time that the children will be educated in the right way and that the one who is physically strong will sustain the weak elderly people as much as he can.

[11] On the new happy Earth there will also be marriages, but only

according to My order as it is the case in Heaven, and also a great number of children will be begotten, but not by way of pure lewdness but by way of the true earnest of love, and this until the end of all times of this Earth.

[12] Here you have now a true image of the last judgment over all the heathens on the whole Earth, which is also very easy for you to understand.”

## 97. THE MISSION OF GOD’S CHILDREN IN THE BEYOND. THE DURATION OF EXISTENCE OF THE EARTH.

 **ow the disciples asked Me:** “Lord and Master. Will we be able to join to see and experience all this from the Kingdom of spirits? And how long will the happy Earth still continue to exist after that time till the complete end of its times?”

[2] **I said:** “Concerning your first question, it is of course obvious that you not only will be able to see, hear and feel all this very clearly from the Heavens, but then and for all times you also will be the most important leaders, and not only on the new Earth but also over the whole great Man of Creation and over all infinite many unions of all Heavens, which are limited nowhere throughout eternity.

[3] Therefore, I say to you once more that no human being has ever seen or heard, and that the spirit of no human being has ever experienced what God has prepared for those who truly love Him.

[4] I still could tell and also show you many things but you cannot yet bear it now. However, when the Spirit of all truth and all life will come over you and you will be reborn into it, it will guide you into all depths of My light and will exalt you. Only then you will understand and perceive what great words I have spoken now to you, and through you, also to all human beings.

[5] Concerning your second question, this is still quite silly, for our arithmetic has no figure by which one could express the more than many earthly years that will last until the end of the Earth. And

even if that would be possible, this will make absolutely no difference for him who will continue to exist eternally in the spirit.

[6] I say to all of you: of such an eventual appointed time and hour not even an angel in Heaven knows anything about it. Only the Father in Heaven knows. Because the whole creation is His greatest thought, which is however not a thought of time but it is an eternal thought, and at the same time He is the almighty carrier and preserver of it. Recently I have told you that finally all the material will be changed – but as independent being – into something purely spiritual. And so it is no more necessary to tell you anything more about it.

[7] But rather look now at the beautiful nature at the beginning of the day, and see how the increasing intensity of the light of the sun is chasing away all the haze and darkness of the Earth, and learn from this that this will also be your work in future times, and this will be better for you than to inform too zealously after things which by far are not your concern now.

[8] Very often I have shown you already many things about which you should be concerned. About all the rest you should not be concerned in the least. Yes, I say to you that it is even useless and fruitless – if in your faith and love you are really devoted to Me – to worry about the coming day, what you will eat and drink and with what you will clothe your body.

[9] Does one not receive 100 sparrows for 1 penny on the market? Thus, how small is the value for the people, and nevertheless the Father in Heaven takes care of them and clothes them. You as human beings are surely more valuable than those sparrows.

[10] See those flowers of the field and the lilies. In his entire luster, Salomon was not clothed that beautiful as they are. And who is the One who cares for their garment? Therefore, all such worries from your side are fruitless, and even more fruitless are the worries about the future complete end of times of this Earth. Did you all understand this well now?"

[11] All of them except Judas Iscariot assent to it. He thought that it was not completely clear to him what I had predicted on the

mountain about the last judgment of the heathens.

[12] **I** said however to him: “Go to those to whom it has become clear. What the Romans and gentiles were able to understand, should be for you as Jew and as old disciple certainly be understandable.”

[13] On this, he said nothing anymore and withdrew again, for he had noticed why I had given him such an answer.

## 98. THE GRATEFULNESS OF THE ROMANS TO MARY OF MAGDALON



WHEN we still were enjoying ourselves for awhile on that hill, we all saw Mary of Magdalon coming to the inn of Lazarus, and she immediately took information from his servants about Me. They told her however that she had to wait until I would be back. When she soon could clearly see us on the hill, she did not allow them to stop her and ran quickly to us.

[2] When she came near to the place where we were, Agricola came to meet her, greeted her friendly and took her then to us where the other Romans also greeted her in a very friendly way.

[3] **She (Mary of Magdalon) said however:** “I really do not know for what reason such an honor is granted to me. I am only a sinner and deserve it to be deeply despised by all the people, but the fact that I am worthy of any honor, and especially of such highly ranked lords as you are, is quite above my understanding. I only came to this place to thank the Lord of my life because He delivered me of the evil spirits of the flesh, but I did not come here to let myself be honored.”

[4] **Agricola said:** “Listen, dear Mary of Magdalon. All of us, who have come here from Rome have a lot to be grateful about to you, for if you had not shown us about 8 days ago the way to here and had not lead us to this place, we might not have had the eternal invaluable happiness to know personally the Lord of all life and of everything, to recognize Him as the only true God and to learn to love Him above all. Look, that is the only reason why we are so

grateful to you and will also remain so from now on. Therefore, do not be too surprised that we are meeting you with such great gratitude. For we consider this to be our duty because you have given us such an invaluable great happiness.

[5] For we have a good law of state according to which the one who has received a great and true happiness by someone, has to remain extremely grateful to that person for the rest of his life in attitude, words and deeds, even if the person by whose action a great happiness fell to another person, did not know that he would bring happiness to his fellowman. This gratitude should also be extended to the descendants of the person who was the cause of the happiness.

[6] However, what are material earthly possessions that a person can receive from another compared to the pure spiritual possessions, which we have received here? By this we have found the only true God, and through Him ourselves who were lost, and the true life of our souls. And this is infinitely much more than when you had given us all treasures of the world. And that is why we are forever indebted a great gratitude to you because you are the person who made this mostly possible.

[7] If you would be poor in earthly possessions we would royally reward you, but since you are already richly provided with the goods of this Earth, we cannot express our gratitude in any other way except by our friendly, well-meant and unfeigned words as they came out of our hearts, and I suppose that you will not reject such gratitude that we owe you?”

[8] **Now Mary of Magdalon said also in a kind voice:** “It certainly is very nice and kind of you noble Romans that you want to be and remain grateful to me for the fact that I gave you by coincidence – really unintentionally – such an endless great happiness, which is easy to understand, but nevertheless, for this reason I deserve no gratitude because all that was the will of the Lord, and I was only His dumb and blind instrument. Thus, you only owe gratitude and honor to Him.”

[9] **Agricola said again:** “Oh dear, lovely Mary of Magdalon. We

also know that we only owe all our gratitude to Him, but we reason like this: if we truly and completely want to prove our gratitude to the Lord for the infinite great mercy that He has now given us so extremely abundantly, then we still may not look disdainful upon the instrument that He used for our sanctification, but we must also honor it because of the Lord. And only in this respect we are honoring you also, apart from the question if you were a seeing or only a blind instrument in the almighty hand of the Lord for this our very great happiness of life, and I am of the opinion that also this will be taken into account in the future. For if we would not want to greet the instrument of the Lord with a thankful heart, what would happen to true neighborly love, which we – according to the teaching of the Lord – even owe to our enemies, and even more so to those by whom the Lord gave us such great gifts of mercy?

[10] Look, you who are now our very lovely and unforgettable friend, I am right in this and I will not allow anybody to dispute it, and now not in the least by you whom the Lord had chosen to be our leading star for happiness and who we therefore owe honor and true love. Therefore, allow me that which is my good right.”

[11] **Mary of Magdalon said:** “Yes, yes, in that respect, high lord, you are completely right, but I myself will glorify and praise the Lord, my only love, forever, for He made me – a great sinner – a blind and dumb instrument. For if I had known that He was up here, I would not have brought you here because I, who am a too great sinner, would not have dared to come close to the Lord since I am all too deeply convinced about the truth of His teaching and of His holy godly Being, and can also perceive that a sinner, as I was, can never be or become worth to come near to His very holy personality.

[12] But firstly I did not know that the Lord was staying here with His faithful disciples. However, I knew that this inn is one of the best of all Jerusalem. And because strangers usually visit this place, I have brought you here when you held me up in a street in the city and asked me for a good inn. Therefore, humanly

speaking, I only can claim your gratitude, which is due to me as guide to a good inn. But for the fact that you have received here the highest grace from the Lord, I really do not deserve any gratitude since it impossibly could have been my intention to give this here to you. Indeed, I could not have known that you would receive such a grace here. Therefore, give all thanks and all honor to the Lord, and so, do not think about me. This is even my urgent request to you.”

[13] Then I said: “Listen, My Mary. You have now spoken very well and truly and you are completely right where it concerns you, but also the Romans are right where it concerns them. When you are giving Me all honor and thanks, you show that you are completely filled with the true spirit of humility, for which reason also all your sins are forgiven. But also the Romans are showing that they are permeated with the right spirit of neighborly love, and are therefore not committing a sin against Me if out of gratitude they are keeping you in mind, even if you were only a blind instrument of My love and My will.

[14] But by this opportunity I say to you all: it is true that you should not look for gratitude and honor from the people to whom you have done something good in My name, just as I also am not looking for it from the people, for He who lives in Me, is My supreme honor. But if the people will put you to shame for the highest good deeds of life given in My name and will treat you with ingratitude, then I will hold it against them as if they had done this to Me. For he who does not honor the true disciple who I have awakened, and is not grateful to him in My name, he also does not honor Me, the Lord and Master, and he also is not grateful to Me for the grace that was given to him.

[15] For if I awaken disciples and prophets, then this does not only happen for the sake of those disciples and prophets, but for the sake of all men, and therefore the disciples and prophets should be valued also as that for what they are called be Me. Thus, whoever will accept with love and true gratitude a disciple or a prophet in My name, I will also accredit it to him as if he had accepted Me,



and therefore he also will once receive the reward of a disciple or a prophet. And their reward will certainly not be small.

[16] But woe to the false disciples and prophets who will let themselves be honored by the people, just like the Pharisees and high priests, and will even demand it lawfully from the people. Truly, those will be regarded as thieves and robbers and will once be made ashamed before the eyes of all the angels. The more honor they will demand in this world for themselves, the more of the worst shame they will once have to expect.

[17] Also this you all have to remember well – and this you also can easily do – for if you look in the right light at My command of true and pure neighborly love, you very easily will understand that every real and true human being is hurt most of all by the stinking pride of his fellowman.

## 99. THE COMING JUDGMENTS



THUS, let everyone be full of meekness and humility. By that you will give each other the greatest and most true human honor, and live and have dealings with each other in peace and quietness.

[2] However, thirst for honor and pride will awaken resentment, offence, contempt, grudge, anger and finally vengeance, war and its evil consequences. The one who is proud and is thirsty for honor is also always full of self-interest and greed, and the sad consequence for the fact that he only wants to acquire everything for himself to increase his worldly honor, is that hundreds and thousands of people around him have nothing and must live in the greatest poverty and need, as it was the case during the time of Noah, and will be the case even more during the last time of the new paganism.

[3] But this evil and complete hellish condition among the people will be the judgment that they will cause themselves. The enormous number of poor and oppressed people will finally rise against their extremely proud oppressors and will make a short

work with them, and this will be a second flood by the fire of the finally too badly and too heavily oppressed poor people.

[4] But during that time, also a natural fire will destroy many places, for because of a too highly inflated pursuit of earthly gain during that time, the people will penetrate like malicious worms into the depths of the Earth, will search therein all kinds of treasures and will also find them. However, once they will have reached the mighty layers of buried ancient forests of the Earth and will use them for the glowing and melting of metals and still for many other things, then also, the latest judgment which they will prepare for themselves, will be at the door.

[5] Yet, the people who will then live in the great cities of the kings and the mighty of the Earth of that time will have to suffer the most.

[6] Therefore, always stay meek and humble, and by that in true neighborly love, then no judgment will be called over you, because where during that time the people will live according to My order, there will be no last judgment. I have told you this now beforehand with the purpose that you will also tell and proclaim it to the people, so that finally no one can bring forward the excuse that he had not been warned for the danger.”

[7] **All of them** said: “Lord and Master, with Your help, we truly will not lack the zeal for the good and true cause. But there are many people on the Earth, which is big and vast, and we will not be able to come to every place, and so, the evil will continue to be rampant between that which is good and true, and we probably will not be able to limit it completely.”

[8] **I** said: “You certainly will not be accountable for that, just like every truly good person in My name. For it is sufficient that the truth is proclaimed to the people. If they will live and act according to it, is completely their concern. Whoever will live and act according to it, will not come into the judgment, but will receive eternal life and be blessed.”

## 100. MARY OF MAGDALON AND THE LORD



**ow Mary of Magdalon** came to Me and said: “O Lord and Master, can I also still be blessed and ever receive eternal life? For I am a great sinner, and in Your very holy presence it seems to me more and more that I am too unworthy for Your very smallest mercy.”

[2] **I** said: “Do remain in the pure love, and sin no more. This must be your concern. I surely will take care in your place for all the rest. I have set you free from your impure spirits and I have said to you that your sins are forgiven because you have proven a great love to the poor and now you also love Me above all. However, to whom I say: your sins are forgiven, they are also truly forgiven, but he should no more sin in the future, because if he would sin again, he will set out for a still worse condition than the first one. But I can see the earnest will in you to sin no more, and then you also will remain in My love and mercy. And whoever remains in My love and mercy, has already eternal life in himself, and by that eternal happiness.

[3] Whoever, out of love for Me will do everything what neighborly love requires, for him I also will do everything that lies in My power. And in My power lies not only much, but everything. If you, dear Mary, know this now, then be cheerful and do from now on that which is good. Then I will never leave you.”

[4] On this, Mary of Magdalon was deeply moved and fell at My feet, thanked Me and wet My feet with her tears and dried them with her hair. My old disciples thought that this scene took a little too long and according to their opinion also somewhat inappropriate, and they grumbled among themselves.

[5] However **I** noticed it and said to them: “Why are you irritated because of that? I am already a long time with you. You have never shown Me such love and I have also not demanded it from you. But I say to you now also: wherever My gospel will be preached to the people, this Mary should also be clearly mentioned, for she has proven Me a great favor of love. Remember

that also. You, Mary, stand up now and be assured of My full love and mercy.”

[6] Then Mary stood up and thanked Me once more, her heart completely filled with love.

[7] Now the disciples asked Me and her to forgive their little impatience.

[8] I said: “Learn to be patient with the weak, then in My eyes you will show by that more power for your souls, than when you will only fight and overcome heroes.

[9] But now the sun has already climbed high above the horizon and the morning meal is ready. We will take it and will then go from here to Bethany.”

[10] Then we quickly went into the house and took the morning meal where also our Mary joined in.

[11] After the morning meal Lazarus made up the account and took the profit as well as the other treasures and valuables with him. Seven mules were needed to carry it, since also the treasures of the various converted priests, which Lazarus was keeping, were also included.

[12] Nicodemus, Joseph of Arimathea and the old rabbi commended themselves in My mercy and love, thanked for everything and went together with the magicians into the city where they had some things to do. The magicians however went to their companions who were anxiously waiting for them. The 2 Romans who lived in Emmaus went with the 7 Egyptians to Emmaus from where the last mentioned ones returned after a few days to their country. All the others who were present went with us to Bethany.

[13] It is not necessary to mention here in more details who else was present, since those were already mentioned a few times during the related events on the Mount of Olives.

[14] Mary of Magdalon asked Me if she could also follow us to Bethany, and she asked Me how long I would stay in Bethany.

[15] I said: “I will rest there for 3 days, for I have worked much, and after much work, one may grant himself some rest. When you

will have arranged everything at home, come to us in Bethany.”  
[16] Then Mary went directly home in order to arrange everything there, even for a few days, because she intended to stay with Me during that time.

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. A REMARKABLE SUNRISE .....	2
2. THE CAUSE OF THE SECONDARY SUNS .....	5
3. THE LORD EXPLAINS THE PHENOMENON OF THE SECONDARY SUNS .....	10
4. INSTRUCTIONS OF THE LORD FOR THE VISIT TO THE TEMPLE .....	14

### THE LORD IN THE TEMPLE

5. HEALING BEFORE THE TEMPLE OF THE MAN WHO WAS BORN BLIND .....	17
6. THE LORD TALKS TO THE ONE WHO WAS HEALED AND TO THE PHARISEES .....	22
7. THE LORD DRAWS LIGHT UPON THE COUNTER-ARGUMENT OF THE PHARISEES .....	24
8. A PHARISEE EXPLAINS HIS PHILOSOPHY OF LIFE .....	30
9. THE ETERNAL LIFE OF THE SOULS .....	32
10. A NEW PLAN OF THE TEMPLE SERVANTS TO CATCH THE LORD .....	35
11. THE PHARISEES TRY TO CATCH THE LORD .....	37
12. THE PARABLE OF THE WORKERS IN THE VINEYARD .....	41
13. THE PHARISEES ASK FOR GOD'S KINGDOM .....	47
14. THE PARABLE OF THE KING AND HIS WEDDING FEAST .....	49
15. ASKING FOR THE TAX COIN .....	52
16. JESUS AND THE SADDUCEES. MARRIAGE IN HEAVEN .....	55
17. THE LORD ASKS THE PHARISEES WHAT THEY THINK ABOUT THE TRIUNE BEING OF GOD .....	57
18. THE LORD TALKS ABOUT THE SCRIBES .....	61
19. THE LORD CRITICIZES THE PHARISEES .....	63
20. THE LORD CALMS DOWN THE PEOPLE .....	66
21. THE FREE WILL OF MAN. MAN'S IMPATIENCE AND GOD'S TOLERANCE .....	68
22. THE FUTURE OF JERUSALEM .....	70
23. THE LORD ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES WITH THOSE THAT BELONG TO HIM .....	75

## THE YEARS OF ADOLESCENCE OF THE LORD

24.	JOSEPH REFUSES TO HELP A GREEK .....	77
25.	THE ATTITUDE OF THE LORD AS A YOUNG MAN. TOWARDS THE PRIESTS .....	80
26.	THE LORD GIVES A FEW EXAMPLES OF HIS OMNIPOTENCE .....	83
27.	ARRIVAL AT THE PROPERTY OF THE GREEK .....	87
28.	TEACHING ON THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN .....	91
29.	THE TRIP TO TYRE .....	95
30.	MEETING CYRENIUS AGAIN .....	98
31.	AT THE PALACE OF CYRENIUS .....	102
32.	TRUE WORSHIP OF GOD. JESUS AS AN EXAMPLE FOR MEN .....	104
33.	THE FREE WILL OF MAN .....	107
34.	THE EDUCATION OF HUMANITY .....	109
35.	CRITICISM OF THE ROMAN CONCERNING THE EARTHLY CONDITIONS .....	112
36.	GOD'S PURPOSE WITH MAN .....	114
37.	THE SPIRITS EXPLAIN ABOUT THE WORLD IN THE BEYOND .....	116
38.	THE LIFE OF JULIUS CAESAR IN THE BEYOND .....	119
39.	ABOUT BELIEVING AND SEEING .....	123
40.	ADAM AND EVE, THE FIRST HUMAN BEINGS OF THE EARTH. THE PRE-ADAMITES .....	125
41.	THE APPARENT VALUE OF OUTER CULTURAL DEVELOPMENT .....	127
42.	THE WAY TO SPIRITUAL PERFECTION .....	130
43.	ARRIVAL IN NAZARETH .....	134
44.	THE DEATH OF THE RABBI .....	137
45.	THE FIRE IN THE HOUSE OF THE NEIGHBORS .....	140
46.	THE CHARITY OF A FEW CITIZENS .....	144
47.	IN THE FOREST OF THE NEIGHBOR .....	146
48.	THE FESTIVE DINNER AT THE NEIGHBOR'S HOUSE .....	149
49.	DISGUISED PRIESTS VISIT LAZARUS .....	153
50.	THE REQUEST OF THE PHARISEES FOR A SAFE ESCORT .....	159
51.	THE RELIGIOUS IDEAS OF THE PHARISEES .....	162
52.	A SCRIBE REFERS TO GOD'S ORDER .....	166

53.	THE PHARISEES TALK AMONG EACH OTHER ABOUT THE EARLY DEATH OF CHILDREN AND ABOUT THE MESSIAH .....	169
54.	LAZARUS TELLS ABOUT HIS EXPERIENCES WITH THE LORD .....	172
55.	LAZARUS ACCUSES THE INDIFERENCE OF THE PHARISEES .....	176
56.	THE HESITATIONS OF THE PHARISEES CONCERNING THE LORD .....	180
57.	LAZARUS' TESTIMONY OF THE LORD .....	183
58.	RAPHAEL MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN .....	187
59.	THE LORD COMMENDS LAZARUS .....	189
60.	ABOUT MATTER AND THE DANGER OF IT .....	191
61.	THE IDEAS OF AGRICOLA ABOUT THE FUTURE OF THE TEACHING OF THE LORD .....	195
62.	THE SPEECH OF THE LORD ABOUT THE FUTURE OF HIS TEACHING .....	197
63.	ABOUT THE DENSITY OF THE POPULATION OF THE EARTH. THE DIFFICULTIES WITH OLD AGE .....	202
64.	ABOUT THE REINCARNATION OF THE INHABITANTS OF THE STARS .....	205
65.	THE TREATMENT OF THE PEOPLE ON THIS SIDE AND IN THE BEYOND .....	208
66.	THE GATE OF HEAVEN AND THE KINGDOM OF GOD .....	210
67.	THE POWERLESSNESS OF MAN .....	212
68.	ABOUT THE LAWS OF THE LORD .....	215
69.	AGRICOLA ASKS FOR GUIDELINES FOR THE EDUCATION OF THE YOUTH .....	119
70.	THE PROCESS OF SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT .....	222
71.	HOW TO MAKE AN END TO THE PAGAN PRIESTHOOD .....	224
72.	THE TRINITY IN GOD AND MAN .....	227
73.	THE ACTIVITIES OF THE THREE BODIES OF MAN .....	231
74.	THE BEING OF GOD .....	235
75.	THE LORD AS SON .....	238
76.	ABOUT INFINITE SPACE AND ETERNITY .....	242
77.	COMPARISON BETWEEN THE BEINGS AND THE UNIVERSAL INTELLIGENCE .....	245
78.	ABOUT KNOWING THE FUTURE .....	249



79.	AGRIPPA TELLS ABOUT HIS EXPERIENCE WITH A POSSESSED ILLYRIAN .....	251
80.	THE LORD EXPLAINS THE NATURE OF POSSESSION .....	254
81.	THE LOCATION OF THE SPIRIT WORLD .....	257
82.	THE NATURE OF SATAN .....	259
83.	ABOUT THE PERSONALITY OF SATAN .....	263
84.	WHERE THE PERSONAL DEVILS ARE RESIDING .....	267
85.	UNDERSTANDING THE REASONS FOR THE PROMORDIAL CREATION .....	269
86.	ABOUT PRAYING FOR THE DECEASED .....	272
87.	ABOUT THE RUINS WHERE GHOSTS ARE .....	276
88.	THE MEANING OF BREAD AND WINE. ABOUT THE CEREMONIES .....	279
89.	POLYGAMY .....	283
90.	THE RIGHT PENANCE .....	286
91.	FORGIVENESS OF SINS .....	289
92.	THE NATURE SPIRITS OF THE AIR .....	293
93.	AGRICOLA REMEMBERS MARIA OF MAGDALON .....	297
94.	THE JUDGMENT ON PAGANISM .....	299
95.	THE FUTURE OF ROME AND OF THE ANTICHRIST .....	301
96.	ABOUT THE 1,000-YEAR KINGDOM .....	304
97.	THE MISSION OF GOD’S CHILDREN IN THE BEYOND. THE DURATION OF EXISTENCE OF THE EARTH. ....	306
98.	THE GRATEFULNESS OF THE ROMANS TO MARY OF MAGDALON .....	308
99.	THE COMING JUDGMENTS .....	312
100.	MARY OF MAGDALON AND THE LORD .....	314

---